

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

- A-hu-t'ai 阿忽台, 505  
 A-i, 阿移, *see* Li Te-ming  
 A-jung 阿榮, 569–70  
 A-ku-nai 阿古迺, 313  
 A-ku-ta 阿骨打 (Chin emperor)  
     (r. 1115–23; canonized T'ai-ts'u), 14,  
     140–2, 144, 151, 230, 232, 233, 239,  
     245, 284, 288  
     death of, 226, 227  
     declared himself emperor of new Chin  
         dynasty, 142, 144, 146  
     legal customs under, 289 and *meng-an*  
         *mou-k'o* system, 273, 274 and  
         political structure of Jurchens, 265,  
         266  
     reign of, 220–6  
     war with Liao, 146–9, 150  
 A-la-ch'u-k'o 阿拉楚喀, 221  
 A-la-chi-pa 阿刺吉八, *see* Aragibag  
 A-la-t'e-na-shih-li 阿刺忒納失里, 543  
 A-la-t'e-ta-la 阿刺忒答剌, 556  
 A-lan-ta-erh 阿蘭答兒, 409  
 A-li 阿里, 497  
 a-li-hsi 阿里喜, 274  
 A-li-ku 阿里骨, 194–6  
 A-lu-hun Sa-li 阿魯渾薩理, 494–8  
 A-lu-wei 阿魯威, 540  
 A-mu-ko 阿木哥, 539  
 A-nan-ta 阿難答, 505  
 A-li-ku, 194–5, 196  
 A-ni-ko 阿尼哥, 470, 471  
 A-pao-chi 阿保機, (Ch'i-tan emperor)  
     (canonized T'ai-ts'u), 51, 52–3, 75,  
     76, 81, 84, 88, 91, 96, 107, 116, 126,  
     164  
 ancestral temple, 89  
 death of, 67  
 dual system of administration, 77  
 khaghan and ascent to throne, 60–8  
 punitive expedition against Hsi, 97–8  
 rise to power, 53–60, 141  
 tax system, 95–6  
 A-pu-li 阿不里, 76  
 A-san 阿散, 537  
 A-san Huo-che 阿散火者, 537  
 A-shu 阿疎, 142, 221  
 A-su 阿速, 532  
 A-su-tai 阿速帶, 399  
 A-yung, 554  
 Abakha, Ilkhan, 433  
 'Abbāsid Caliphate, 4, 404, 413  
 Abd al-Rahmān, 380–1, 383–4, 386  
 Abū Said, Īl-khān, 539  
 Academy of Calendrical Studies (T'ai-shih  
     yüan), 607  
 Academy of Scholarly Worthies (Chi-hsien  
     yüan), 515, 528, 531, 555, 606  
 Academy of the Pavilion of the Star of  
     Literature (K'uei-chang-ko hsüeh-  
     shih yüan), 554–6  
 academy painters, 312  
 accession ceremony (A-pao-chi), 62–3  
 acculturation, 21  
 actors/actresses, 467  
 administration, 30, 41  
     of China, 427–9  
     Chinese style, 23  
     Chinggis khan, 343–5  
     empress dowager Ch'eng-t'ien, 91  
     foreign domination and, 36–7

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

778

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

- language of, 31  
 local, 79  
 multilingual and, 30–6  
 of north China, 360–2, 363, 364,  
     407–9, 414–15  
 steppe tribes, 323  
*see also* governance; government  
 administration (Chin/Jurchen), 265–70  
     language problem in, 282–3  
     reform of, 244  
 administration (Liao/Khitani), 66, 76–80,  
     137  
     A-pao-chi, 63–4  
     dual, 63–4, 67, 77–8  
*see also* regional administration  
 administration (Mongol empire), 379–81,  
     383–4, 386–8, 395  
 army in, 346–7  
 Khubilai, 418–20, 427–9  
 of personnel from conquered states,  
     350  
 racially and ideologically balanced, 497  
 restructuring, 372–5  
 Temür, 498–9  
 Tugh Temür, 547–9  
 Yesün Temür, 537–8  
 Yüan state, 507–10, 560, 573–5, 577,  
     663  
 administrative apparatus: Hsia state, 154;  
     Mongolian empire, 396–8  
 administrative specialists, 380  
 adultery, 289  
 Afghanistan, 401, 411  
 “age of discoveries,” 21  
 Agency of Men and Things Gone Astray  
     (Lan-i chien), 605, 614  
 agents (*wu hsing*), in dynastic emblems,  
     249–50  
*agbtachi*, 344  
 agrarian sector, 658  
 agricultural colonies, 447–8, 601  
 agricultural communities (*she*), 599, 661,  
     662  
 agricultural villages, 662  
 agricultural tax (*khalan*), 401, 402, 403  
 agriculture, 8, 11, 522, 658, 662  
     Chin (Jurchen), 246–7, 275, 291–4  
     Liao (Khitani), 57, 94–5  
     Khubilai and, 415, 416, 418, 445, 447,  
         452  
     Mongols, 328, 329, 378  
     state farm system, 577  
     Yüan rule, 598–9  
 Agriculture-Encouragement Bureau  
     (Ch'üan-nung ssu), 598  
 Ahmad, 473–4, 475, 478, 481, 484, 497,  
     510, 526  
 Ai-tsung 哀宗, (Ning-chia-su; Shou-li;  
     Shou-hsü; Chin emperor)  
     (r. 1224–34), 261, 262, 264, 372  
 Ai-yü-li-pa-li-pa-ta 愛育黎拔力八達, *see*  
     Ayurbarwada khagan  
 'Ain Jälüt, 405  
 Akhutai, 505, 506  
 Ala Khush Digid Khuri, 342, 349  
 Ālā Qamāq, 389, 391  
 Ālā Qamāq diet, 392  
 'Alamdar, 409  
 Alan Gho'a, 330  
 Alans, in Mongolian army, 403  
 Alashan (Ho-lan Mountains), 123, 154  
 alcoholism, 472; *see also* drinking,  
     drunkenness  
 Alghu, 411, 424  
 Alī, 497  
 “All under Heaven” (*t'ien-hsia*) concept, 2,  
     17, 18  
 alliances, 5; Hsia (Tangut), 104–5, 164;  
     Liao (Khitani), 57, 72, 81, 82, 85,  
         104–5, 122; *see also* marriage  
     alliances  
 Almalikh, 443  
 alphabet (s), 465, 466, 643–4  
 Altai Mountains, 43, 323, 391, 342, 366  
 Altaic languages, 45  
 Altan Bukha, 533  
 Altars of the Soil and Grain, 457  
 amateur painters, 469

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

779

- Ambaghai khan, 251, 332, 333, 334  
 Amdo (province), 155–6, 173  
 Amdo-Kokonor region, 156  
 Amugha, 538–9  
 Amur River, 218  
 An-ch'u-hu River 按出虎, 221  
 An-fu 安撫, 470  
 An-hsi 安西, prince of, 505, 533  
 An Lu-shan 安祿山, 49, 50  
 An Lu-shan rebellion, 4, 50, 54, 61,  
     147–8, 159–60  
 An-ta-ch'u 按答出, 537  
 An-t'an (t'i) Pu-hua 按攤 (梯) 不花, *see*  
     Altan Bukha  
 An Ts'ung-chin 安從進, 164–5  
 An-tu-la-ho-man 按都刺合蠻, 380  
 An-t'ung 安童, 444, 529–30  
 An-tuan 安端, 59, 76, 81  
*Analects* (Confucius), 33, 34, 155, 204, 271,  
     567  
 Ananda, 505–6, 533  
 Andachu, 537  
 ancestor worship, 457, 458, 572  
 ancestral shrines, 59, 63  
*anda* ("sworn friend"), 335, 336; of  
     Jamuga, 338, 339, 342  
 Anhwei, 85, 214, 388  
 animals: kept by Mongols, 326–7, 330;  
     *see also* horses; livestock  
 Annam (kingdom), 407, 485, 501  
 annexation, 12  
 annual grants (*sui-t'zu*), 608  
 annual payments, *see* tribute  
 Ao-lo Po-chi-lieh, 238  
*ao-lu* 奧魯, 595, 602  
 Ao-tu-la-ho-man 按都刺合蠻, 380  
 Aoyama Kōryō 青山公亮, 592–11  
 appanage administrations (*t'ou-hsia*),  
     520–2; appanage princes  
     limits on power of, 399  
 appanages (*khubi*, *t'ou-hsia*, *fen-ti*), 26, 66,  
     379, 381, 397, 428, 588, 607, 612,  
     629, 661  
     administration of, 662  
     and central government, 428  
     of Khubilai, 415, 416, 418–20  
     Möngke's intervention in, 400, 408  
     power of, 448  
     struggle for control over, 607–8  
 Arabs, 5, 642  
 Aragibag (Emperor T'ien-shun)  
     (r. 1328), 541, 544  
 Aral Sea, 151  
 Aratnadarā, 556–7  
 Aratnashiri, 543  
 architecture, 39, 609, 644; Khubilai's  
     influence on, 470, 471  
 archives, 452  
 Arghun Akha, 398, 401  
 Arghun Sali, 499  
 Arghun tribe, 570  
 Argun River, 329, 340  
 Arigh Böke, 24, 414, 533  
     death of, 424  
     defender of traditional ways, 421–2  
     Khubilai versus, 422–9  
     sons of, 445  
     and succession struggle, 411, 412, 445,  
         454  
 Arigh Khaya, 435  
 aristocracy, 269, 491, 512, 571; in  
     succession struggles, 505–7  
 aristocratic privileges: failure to curtail, by  
     Ayubarwada, 520–2, 526–7  
 Armenians, 404  
 armies, 37–8, 42  
     Chin, 13  
     China, 54, 55  
     multinational, 12–13  
     Hsia (Tangut), 183, 186, 187  
     Liao (Khitan), 118–20  
     *see also* military; specific armies  
         (e.g., Mongolian army)  
 Arslan khan, 350  
 artillery, 431, 433, 434  
 artisan class, 445, 448–9; hereditary, 449  
 artisan households, 562–3, 607, 613,  
     653–6

- artisans (*chiang*), 470, 473; classes of, 653–4; supervision of, 604, 607; in Yüan social order, 648, 653–6
- artists, 452
- arts, 644; Chin state, 304–13; Khubilai's support for, 465, 467–71, 472, 473; literati elite and, 642–3; patronage of, by Tugh Temür, 553–6
- Arukhai, 540
- Asha Gambu, 210, 211
- Asia, 5
- Asia Minor, 370
- assassination(s), 62, 393, 404
- assimilation, 9, 141
- astronomy, 306, 451
- Asud Guard (A-su Wei), 532, 533
- Asuds, 547
- Asudai, 399
- authority: Chinese tripartite division of, 587; fragmentation of, 30; central, 5, 25–7; personalized, 22–3; in Yüan state, 559
- autocracy, 23–5, 30, 266
- autocratic-bureaucratic system, 21–2, 491, 493, 558
- avenging army (*yüan chün*) (Khitan), 144
- ayimagh kesigden* 愛馬怯薛丹, 579
- Ayurbarwada khaghan 愛育黎拔力八達  
(Emperor Jen-tsung) (r. 1311–20), 505, 506–7, 535, 539, 543, 546, 559, 646  
codification of law, 518–19  
death of, 526–7, 528  
early orientations of, 513–14  
economic and fiscal policies of, 522–3  
and factional struggles, 524–7  
failure to curtail aristocratic privileges, 520–2  
purge of officials by, 513, 514–15  
reign of, 513–27, 533, 534, 537, 538, 549, 553, 560  
revival of civil service exams, 515–17  
and succession, 512, 527, 541–2
- translation and publication of books, 519–20
- Ayushiridara 愛猷識里達臘, 573, 578, 579–80
- Azerbaijan, 423, 454
- ba'atur* 拔都兒, 343, 568
- Babusha 八不沙, Empress, 557
- badges of authority (*gerege*), 387–8
- Baghdad: Mongolian attack on, 395, 403, 404; sack of, 399, 412
- Baidasha, 549
- Baiju, 370, 529–31, 532; murder of, 532, 538
- balance of power, 307, 47, 59–60, 91, 148
- Balasaghun, 153
- Balkh, 654
- banditry, 41, 117, 199, 387, 574, 576
- banner (*niru*) system (Manchus), 273
- Bar Hebraeus, 414
- barbarians (*fan*), barbarism, 3–4, 13, 21, 281, 308
- Barchuq Art Tegin, 350
- Barin tribe, 495
- Bartan Ba'atur, 333, 336
- barter currency, 196
- barter trade, 264
- basqaqs*, 373–4, 398; *see also darughachi*
- Batachikhan (Mongolian mythical ancestor), 330, 342
- battle standard (*tugh*), 342  
of Temüjin, 343, 347
- Batu, 368, 383, 384, 385, 391, 398  
death of, 412  
Güyük's showdown with, 388–9  
relations with Möngke, 395  
and succession, 392
- ba'urchi*,
- Bayan 伯顏 of the Barin 八鄰 tribe  
(Mongolian general under Hülegü and Khubilai), 423–4, 476, 495–6, 548, 558
- Bayan 伯顏 of the Merkid 蔑兒吉解 tribe  
(High Minister under Tugh Temür

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

781

- and Toghōn Temūr), 547, 549, 589, 566–7, 572–3, 578
- Bayan** 伯顏 (Muslim financial statesmen under Khubilai), 4–97
- Bayan Ula Range, 341
- Bayanchar, 537
- Baya'ud clan, 504
- Begder, 375–6
- Begter, 334
- bēile*, see *bogile*
- Belgütei, 334
- Berke, 412
- Berke Bukha 別兒怯不花, 572–4
- Besh Balikh, 389
- bilinguality, 20, 33
- birthdays of rulers: embassies, 222, 239, 241
- Black Cart tribe, 58
- Black Water Mo-ho, 218
- blacksmiths, 654–5
- blood feuds, 167; Tangut, 157, 191
- “Blue Register” (Kökö Debter), 344
- Blue Register*, 378
- bodhicitta* (enlightened mind), 203
- Bodenchar, 330, 331
- bodyguards, 22, 23; see also *kesig*
- bogile* (rank), 266–7
- Bolod, 533
- books, translation and publication of, 310–11, 519–20, 555–6, 560
- Bo'orchu, 335, 337
- border administration, 270, 273–7
- border conflict, 11, 82, 84, 87, 103, 105, 121, 122, 142, 189, 191–2, 197, 235, 247
- border demarcation, 137, 138, 192
- border fortifications, 110, 111, 193, 246, 250, 252
- border guards (*jūyin*), 207
- border markets, 159, 179, 189, 205, 210, 234, 244, 299; closed, 195, 206; horse trade, 165; transport of goods to/from, 298
- border peoples, 1, 4, 8, 12, 100
- border prefectures, 142, 208
- border provinces, 54, 55, 56; Liao (Khitan) attacks on, 57–8, 61
- border raids, 54, 56, 57–9, 205
- border trade, 121, 122, 141, 170, 261, 299
- border warfare, 244, 261
- borders, 10, 69, 109, 110, 233–4, 240, 244, 246
- Borjigin (lineage, *obogh*), 330–4
- Bōrju, 495
- Boro Khoton, 63
- Börte, 333, 335–6, 366
- Boucher, Guillaume, 462–3
- Branch censorates (Hsing Yü-shih t'ai), 592, 603
- Branch Departments for State Affairs, 510
- Branch Directorates of Waterways, 599
- Branch Ministry of Finance (Hsing hu-pu), 592
- Branch Ministry of Works (Hsing kung-pu), 592
- branch offices (*hsing-sheng*), 427
- Branch Privy Councils (Hsing shu-mi-yüan), 592, 593, 601
- Branch Secretariat of Japan, 594
- Branch Secretariat of Kan-su, 594
- Branch Secretariat of Korea, 594
- Branch Secretariat of Ling-pei, 507, 546, 594
- Branch Secretariats (Hsing-t'ai chung-shu sheng), 361, 592–4; military and, 601; permanent, 592–3; renamed “Branch Departments of State Affairs,” 510
- Branch Secretariats of State Affairs, 593
- 'Bri-gung, 487
- 'Bri-gung-pa order, 461
- bribery: in foreign trade, 298–9
- brutality, ruthlessness: Chin rulers, 239, 240, 241; Mongol court, 471
- Bsod-nams btsang-pa, 541
- Budashiri, Empress 卜答失里, 556, 557, 567; exiled, 573
- Buddha Maitreya, 663

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

782

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

- Buddhism, Buddhists, 40, 364, 420, 434, 462, 627, 630, 644  
 in Chin state, 313–16  
 esoteric, 315  
 honored by emperors, 126, 130, 131, 137  
 in Hsia state, 154–5, 196, 203, 205  
 imperial patronage, 38, 532, 540–1  
 influence of, 529, 645  
 Khubilai and, 415, 416–17, 446, 459, 460–2, 481–2  
 in Liao court, 312  
 in Mongolian empire, 490  
 schools of, 314–15  
 of Yüan China, 506, 587, 643  
*see also* Ch'an Buddhism; Tibetan Buddhism
- Buddhist affairs, supervision of, 479–80
- Buddhist art, 312
- Buddhist clergy, 137; supervision of, 606–7
- Buddhist literature; translation of, 34–5
- Buddhist monasteries, 287
- Buddhist monks: rebellion by, in Chin state, 316; state-controlled hierarchy of, 314
- Buddhist rituals, 552, 609
- Buddhist sects, 478
- Buddhist–Taoist conflicts of 1258, 420–1 renewed conflicts in, 1280–1, 481–2
- Buddhist temples, 312
- Buddhist texts: printed, distributed by Jen-tsung, 204–5; translations of, 180, 204
- budget deficits: reign of Khashan, 511, 512; reign of Tugh Temür, 552
- Bujir 不只兒, 387, 398, 401, 408
- Bukha Temür 不花帖木兒, 544, 548
- Bukhara, 654
- Bukhumu 不忽木, 495, 497
- Bulghai, 397
- Bulghar lands, 321
- Bulgars, 357
- Bulukhan, Empress 不魯罕, 504–5, 506
- Bureau for Imperial Manufactures (Chiang-tso yüan), 448
- Bureau of Agriculture (Ssu-nung ssu), 598
- Bureau of Buddhist and Tibetan Affairs (Hsüan-cheng yüan), 588
- Bureau of Tibetan and Buddhist Affairs (Hsuan-cheng yüan), 606–7
- Bureau of Imperial Etiquette (Hsüan-hui yüan), 588, 604, 605
- Bureau of Military Affairs (Shu-mi yüan), 495, 508, 512, 533, 567, 651; managers of, 536, 537, 548, 549, 551; officials of, 543; and restoration movement, 545; Shidebala head of, 527
- Bureau of Transmission (T'ung-cheng yüan), 512, 590
- bureaucracy (*kuan*), 30  
 administration of religion (Chin state), 314, 316  
 aristocracy and, 269  
 attempts to discipline, 531  
 career advancement in, 596–7  
 Chin government, 235, 249–50, 267, 268–73, 306  
 Chinese, 2, 3, 25, 26, 624  
 Confucians in, 515  
 cut by Ming, 584  
 and fiscal policy, 512  
 Hsia state, 182, 186, 200  
 under Khaishan, 507–9  
 under Khubilai, 447  
 Liao (Khitan), 78–9, 80  
 mid-Yüan, 558, 560  
 need for linguistic competence in, 31  
 power bases in, 549  
 reduction of, 514  
 and restoration movement, 546, 547
- bureaucracy (Yüan), 559, 561, 563–4, 584, 587–9, 602  
 in reign of Temür, 499  
 in reign of Tugh Temür, 556  
 in reign of Yesün Temür, 538  
 Chinese purged from, 572, 573

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

783

- factional struggle in, 585  
 mixture of Mongolian and Chinese elements in, 605  
 positions reserved for Mongols and foreigners, 570  
 proliferation of, 583  
 recruitment paths, 564–6  
 and religious educational establishments, 607  
 bureaucratic revision (*chao-shua*), 603  
 bureaucratization: Yüan state, 534, 558  
 bureaucrats: power of, 491, 496, 558–60; in succession struggles, 494, 495, 496, 505–7  
 Buriats (tribe), 328  
 Burkhan Khaldun (holy mountain), 330, 335, 336, 342, 347, 365, 382  
 Burma, 17, 418, 501  
 business empire, Yüan regime as, 562–3  
 Buyirugh 不月魯克, Naiman khan, 339–40, 348  
 cadastral survey (*ching-li*), 523  
 calendars, 63, 220, 451; under Chin, 306; of Khubilai, 458; of Liao (Khitan), 72, 73, 93  
 calligraphy, 311, 529, 642  
 camels, 326, 327, 330  
 canals, 170, 297  
 Canton 廣州, 435  
 capitals, xxix *tab*  
     Chin (Jurchen), 180, 208, 240, 241, 243, 252, 254, 257, 263–4, 270, 279, 294, 300, 372, 455  
     Hsi Hsia (Tangut), 63, 64, 79, 94, 98, 116, 117, 126, 194, 208, 365  
     Khubilai's appanage, 418–19  
     Khubilai's shift to north China, 454–7, 456 *map*  
     Liao (Khitan), 225, 226, 455  
     Liao-yang, 223  
     Mongols, 423, 445, 448, 473, 488  
     Northern Sung, 657  
     Southern Sung, 657  
     Sung, 233, 305–6, 430, 433, 434  
     Uighur, 389  
     *see also* Central Capital  
 captive slaves (*ch'ü-k'ou*), 614  
 captives, 661–4; Chinese, 54, 57, 59 treatment of, 139, 143  
 caravan trade, 443  
 Carpini, Giovanni di Piano, 385, 386  
 Cathay, 21  
 cartographers, 451–2  
 catapult, 433  
 catapult operators (*p'ao-shou*), 403  
 cattle, 292, 293–4; uses of, for Mongols, 326, 327, 330  
 Caucasus, 321, 386  
 cavalry, 12; Chin (Jurchen), 242, 650; Liao (Khitan), 95, 108, 120; Mongolian, 452; T'ang, 9  
 celadons, 470  
 “Celestial Masters” (Taoist popes), 317  
 censorial office, 587  
 censor(s) in chief, 508, 528, 537, 548  
 censors (*chien-ch'a yü-shih*), 471, 532, 538, 556, 603; and factional struggles, 525; rules for, 531  
 Censorate (Yü-shih t'ai), 79, 269, 427, 428, 469, 510, 512, 530, 539, 550, 587, 588, 592  
     Hsia (Tangut), 201  
     and circuits, 594  
     held in check by Toghtō, 578  
     and powers of Mongolian princes, 521  
     in reign of Toghōn Temür, 564  
     and restoration movement, 545  
     Temüder and, 528  
     under Temür, 498  
 census(es), 40, 96  
     Chin government, 276, 277–9, 284, 286–7  
     Liao (Khitan), 117–20  
     Mongolian empire, 387, 395, 401–3, 404, 447, 629  
     north China, 378

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

784

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

- of property, 304
- Yüan, 618–22
- census registration, for fiscal management, 620, 629
- Central Asia, 35, 44, 153, 210, 238, 395, 424; Khubilai and, 442–5
- Central Asian Muslims, 408, 415
- Central Asian Turks, 601
- Central Asians, 12
- Central Capital, Peking as, 40
- Central Capital (Chung-tu) (Chin/Jurchen), 16, 17, 240, 241, 243, 247, 257, 270, 279, 295, 300; Mongols' attack on, 252, 254
- Central Capital (Liao/Khitian), 79, 80, 113, 126, 147, 226; building, 97–8, 110
- Central Capital circuit (Liao/Khitian), 127, 144
- Central China, 214
- central government, 167
  - Chin (Jurchen), 268
  - Hsia (Tangut), 180, 181, 197
  - Liao (Khitian), 125–6
  - Sung dynasty, 85
    - see also* governance: government
- central government (Mongol/Yüan), 379, 399, 400, 411, 572–3, 574; appanages and, 428; disintegration of, 387, 580–1, 582, 583, 584–6
- central ministries (Liao/Khitian), 78–9
- Central Plains, 230, 234, 235, 267–8
- Central Secretariat, 424, 475, 587, 589, 590, 591, 592, 601; Branch Secretariats and, 593; powers of, 588
- centralization, 25–7, 126, 130, 132, 491, 588; under Khubilai, 494; by Ming, 584; Toghto's influence on, 575–7, 578, 582, 585; Yüan, 520, 534, 558
- ceramic production, 470
- ceremony, 19–20, 89, 541; *see also* court ritual
- Ch'a-han, 211–13
- Ch'a-ko, 81
- Chabi 察必, 416–17, 422–3, 426–7, 470; death of, 488
- Chaghadai 察合台, 367, 374, 505, 539; appanage, 379; heirs of, 391, 503; and succession, 366
- Chaghadai/Chaghadaids, 392, 394, 395, 408, 411
  - khanate, 404, 411, 454, 491, 501–2, 539, 542, 545, 550; and election of Khubilai, 423, 442–3; and Tugh Temür reign, 550
  - ulus*, 504
- Chaghan, Ch'a-han 察罕, 513
- Cha-lu-huo-ch'ib* 札魯火赤, 591; *see also jargbuchi*
- Champa, 17, 435, 485–7
- Ch'a-pa-erh 察八兒, 503, 504
- Chaghan Temür 察罕帖木兒, 652
- Ch'ai Jung 柴榮 (Chou emperor) (r. 954–959; canonized as Shih-tsung), 82
- chan-shih ch'eng* 詞事丞, 514
- Chan-shih yüan* 詞事院, 579
- Ch'an Buddhism, 314, 460–1
- Chancellery (Chin government) (Shu-mi yüan), 269
- Chancellery (Liao/Khitian) (Men-hsia sheng), 78
- chancellery practices, Turkic influence on Mongolian, 350
- chancellor (*ch'eng hsiang*), 567
- chancellor of the right (*yu ch'eng hsiang*), *see* grand councillor of the right
- Chang Ch'i-yen 張起巖, 540
- Chang Chiu-ssu 張九思, 497
- Chang Chüeh 張覺, 227
- Chang Hsiao-chieh 張孝傑, 133, 135
- Chang Hsüan 張瑄, 476, 499, 504, 612
- Chang I-ch'ao 張義潮, 162
- Chang Jou 張柔, 359
- Chang Kuei 張珪, 514–15, 525, 531, 537–8

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

785

- Chang P'u 張浦, 170  
 Chang Pang-ch'ang 張邦昌, 229, 230, 307–59  
 Chang Shih-ch'eng 張士誠, 578, 581, 582, 583  
 Chang Shih-chieh 張世傑, 435  
 Chang Ssu-ming 張思明, 528  
 Chang Yang-hao 張養浩, 507, 508, 512, 513, 597–26  
 Chang-lü, 523  
 Chang-tsung 章宗 (Chin emperor), (r. 1189–1208), 245, 246, 249, 250, 252, 269, 277, 293, 301, 311, 312, 553  
     and Buddhism, 313  
     and legal code, 289, 290  
     and national identity, 281  
     patron of arts, 311  
 Chang-wu 彰武, 164–5, 167  
 Ch'ang-an 長安, 5, 16, 47, 49, 50, 56, 79, 160, 163, 359; fall of, 6  
 Ch'ang-an, T'ang capital, 644  
 Ch'ang-chou Prefecture, population of 常洲, 658  
 Ch'ang-ch'un 長春, 317, 318–83, 481  
*ch'ang-p'ing ts'ang* 常平倉, 511  
 Ch'ang-pai shan 長白山 (“Ever-White Mountain”), 220  
 chantefables, 309  
 Chao (surname) 趙, 181  
 Chao Chien, 540  
 Chao Chu-hsin, 531  
 Chao clan, 285  
 Chao family, 241  
 Chao Fu 趙復, 305, 415–16  
 Chao-huai t'ai-tzu 照懷太子, 136  
 Chao-ku 昭古, 51  
 Chao-Hung, 362  
 Chao K'uang-Yin 趙匡胤 (Sung emperor) (r. 960–76; canonized as T'ai-tsu), 84–5  
 Chao Meng-fu 趙孟頫, 469, 478, 513  
 Chao Pi 趙璧, 398, 408, 415, 422, 426  
*chao-she* 詔赦, (decrees and amnesties), 518  
*Chao Shih-jung* 趙世榮, 528  
 Chao Shih-yen 趙世延, 525, 528, 547, 550, 554  
*chao-shua* 照刷, 603  
 Chao Wei-i 趙惟, 133  
*Chao-wen kuan* 曭文館, 531  
 Ch'ao-chou 潮州, 435  
 Chapar, Ch'a-pa-erh, 503, 504  
 Charakhai, 332  
 charity granaries (*i-ts'ang*), 599  
 Cha'ur Beki, 340, 341  
 Che clan 折, 167  
 Che-lung tribes 者龍, 172–3  
 Che-mu 閨母, 230  
 Chechegtü 徹徹禿, 571  
 Cheju Island, 437  
 Chekiang 浙江, 71, 85, 149, 583;  
     population in prefectures of, 658  
 Chekiang Province, 230  
 Chen 振 (state), 48; *see also* Po-hai  
 Chen-chin 真金, 475, 493, 505, 513, 535, 557; death of, 488; descendants of, 495, 506, 536; education of, 458–9  
 Chen-chou 鎮州, 64, 67, 75  
*chen-chü t'ai-kang* 振舉台綱, 531  
*chen-jen* 真人, 318  
 Chen-jung prefecture 鎮戎, 205  
 Chen-kuan 貞觀, 198  
*Chen kuan cheng yao* 貞觀政要 (Essentials of the government of the Chen-kuan period) (Wu Ching), 33, 34, 519, 520  
 Chen-kuan reign period (Hsi-Hsia: 1101–13), 198  
*Chen-kuan yü ching t'ung* 貞觀玉鏡統, 198  
 Chen-ta-tao 真大道, 318  
 Chen Te-hsiu, 459, 519  
 Chen-tsung 真宗 (Sung emperor) (r. 997–1022), 105, 107–8, 177  
*chen-wu* 振武, 163  
*ch'en* 臣, 188  
*Ch'en Hao* 陳顥, 513  
*Ch'en Kuei-lung* 陳桂龍, 476  
*Ch'en Yu-liang* 陳友諒, 581

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

786

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

- Ch'en Yüan, 646–7  
 Ch'en Yüan-ching 陳元覲, 599–30  
*cheng* 正, 624  
 Cheng Chieh-fu 鄭介夫, 498  
*cheng-hu* 正戶, 286, 287  
 Cheng Shen 鄭深, 580  
*cheng-shih sheng* 政事省, 78  
 Chen Ssu-hsiao 鄭思肖, 469  
 Ch'eng Chü-fu 程鉅夫, 515  
*ch'eng-hsiang* 丞相, 78, 422, 427, 508, 567  
 Ch'eng Kuei 成珪, 538  
*ch'eng-kuei* 成規, 496  
 Ch'eng-te (province), 50, 127  
 Ch'eng-t'ien, Empress Dowager, 93 承天;  
     regency of, 87–91  
 Ch'eng-tsung 成宗, *see* Temür khagan  
     ( Yüan Emperor) (r. 1294–1307)  
 Ch'eng-tu 成都, 421  
 Cherig Temür 徹里帖木兒, 570  
 Chi-chou 薊州, Hopei, 70, 88  
*Chi-hsien yüan* 集賢院, 515, 531  
 Chi-nan 濟南, 231, 258  
 Chi-shih 積石, 202  
 Ch'i 齊 (state), 203, 298, 300; dissolution  
     of, 268, 302; prince of, 544  
*ch'i* 敗 (“power of review”), 579  
 Ch'i-an ch'eng 祈安城, 202  
 Ch'i-chou 禹州, 105, 107  
*ch'i-chü chu* 起居注 (court diaries), 665  
*Ch'i hsien chuan* 七賢傳 (Biographies of the  
     Seven worthies), 93  
 Ch'i-lien-shan 祁連山, 211  
 Ch'i-nan-ling Wen-ch'ien-pu 欺南陵溫鑑  
     通, *see* Ku-ssu-lo 唢虧羅  
 Ch'i-shou 奇首 (khaghan), 52, 93  
 Ch'i-t'ien 齊天 [皇后] (empress), 114,  
     115  
 Ch'i-tan 契丹, 44, *see also* Khitan  
*Ch'i-tan kuo chih* 契丹國志, 130, 151  
*Ch'i-tan nan shu-mi yüan* 契丹南樞密院, 77  
*Ch'i-tan pei shu-mi yüan* 契丹北樞密院, 77  
 Chia Ssu-tao 賈似道, 422, 423, 431, 433,  
     434  
*chia-hsiang* 家相, 191  
 Chia-hsing prefecture 嘉興, population of,  
     658  
 Chia-ling River 嘉陵, 410  
 Chiang (people), 9, 156, 157, 166  
*chiang* 匠 (artisans), 653  
 Chiang-che 江浙 (province), 523, 544, 551,  
     584  
 Chiang-che Branch Bureau of Military  
     Affairs, 583  
 Chiang Chiao 姜皎, 29  
 Chiang-hsi 江西 (province), 519, 544; land  
     tax, 523  
 Chiang-ling 江陵 (Hupeh), 542, 543  
 Chiang-nan 江南, 592; Branch Censorate  
     at, 583, 603, 604; Regional Branches  
     of the Grand Bureau of  
     Agriculture, 598  
*Chiang-nan tsung-she chang* 江南總攝掌, 479  
*Chiang-tso yüan* 將作院, 448  
 Ch'iang ( peoples) 羌, 154–7, 166, 169;  
     hairstyle, 181–2; Tibetans  
     conquered territory of, 158–9  
*chiao-shou* 教授, 607  
*chiao-ssu* 邂祀, 553  
 chief administrator (*p'ing-chang cheng-shih*),  
     426  
 chief administrator of the heir apparent's  
     establishment (Kung-hsiang fu), 548  
 chief judge (*yeke jargbuchi*), 344  
 Chief Military Commission (Ta tu-tu fu),  
     548  
 chief ministers, power of, 202  
 chieftainship (*i-li-chin*), 57, 61–2, 221  
 Chieh Hsi-ssu 揭奚斯, 554  
*chieh-tu-shih* 節度使, 220  
*ch'ieh-lien-k'ou* 怯憐口, 607  
*chien* 監, 79  
*chien-ch'a yü-shih* 監察御史, 603, 604  
*chien-chün ssu* 監軍司, 183  
*chien-hu* 監戶, 287  
 Chien-k'ang 建康 (Nanking) 230, 542, 553  
*Ch'ien-heng* 乾亨 (coinage), 97  
 Ch'ien Hsüan 錢選, 469  
*ch'ien-hu* 千戶 (battalion), 520

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

787

- Ch'ien-ling 乾陵 (imperial tomb), 136  
 Ch'ien Liu 錢鏐, 71  
*Ch'ien-tzu wen* 千字文 (One-thousand character classic), 34  
*ch'ien-yüan* 壞院, 542  
 Chigin Temür 赤斤鐵木兒, 533  
 Chih-chih era 至治, reform of, 530–2  
 Chih-ku 直沽, 478  
 Chih-pu-ku 直不姑, *see* Chu-pu-ku  
 Chih-ta paper currency, 514  
*Chih-ta t'ung-pao* 至大通寶, 511  
 Chih-ta yin-ch'ao 至大銀鈔, 511  
 Chih-tan 志丹, 178  
*Chih-yüan* 至元, 495, 498, 514, 518, 568  
 Chih-yüan ch'ao 至元鈔 (paper currency), 479, 511, 514  
 Chih-yüan hsin-ko 至元新格 (Chih-yüan new code), 498, 518  
 Ch'i-h-chin T'ieh-mu-erh 赤斤鐵木兒 (Chigin Temür), 533  
 children, sale of, 287  
 chiliariches, 650  
 Chin 金, 10, 11, 12, 35, 37, 61, 62, 104, 153, 189, 427, 598, 604  
 army, 13  
 and balance of power in East Asia, 203, 206  
 cavalry, 242, 650  
 ceded Kokonor to Hsia, 180  
 as Chinese state, 235  
 closed border markets, 205  
 compiling standard history of, 605  
 conquest of Northern Sung, 657  
 diplomatic intercourse, 19, 20  
 fall of, 368–72  
 frontier defense system, 348–9  
 household of emperor, 22–3  
 imperial guards, 23  
 invasion of Northern Sung, 228 *map*  
 legal system, 28, 29  
 and Mongolian conquest, 207–10, 382, 386  
 Mukhali's campaigns against, 357–60  
 name, 221  
 paper money, 36  
 political history of, after 1142, 235–59  
 prince of 晉王, 143, 146, 147, 150, 521, 535  
 raids south of Yangtze, 231 *map*  
 regnal titles, xxvi *tab*  
 relations with Hsia (Tangut), 197, 205, 210  
 relations with Liao (Khitan), 72–4, 224  
 relations with Sung, 224–35, 247–8, 261  
 ruling clan, 219  
 signification of, 240  
 statutory code (*T'ai-ho lü*), 379  
 succession, 24  
 Supreme Capital (Shang-ching), 221  
 territorial conquest, 36  
 treaties, 18, 20  
 war against Sung, 201  
 and Yüan bureaucracy, 587  
*see also* capitals (Chin); Central Capital (Chin/Jurchen) Chin dynasty  
 Jurchens  
 Chin court, 15, 166, 167, 213, 332;  
 factionalism, power struggles at, 254; and Hsia (Tangut), 201–2;  
 joint deliberation, 24; Mongols and fall of, 264–5  
 Chin dynastic history (*Chin shih*), *see* *Chin shih* (Chin history)  
 Chin dynasty (1115–1234), 70, 215–320, 375, 376, 588, 601, 628  
 A-ku-ta declared himself emperor of new, 142, 144, 146  
 Branch Secretariats of State Affairs, 592  
 censuses, 620–1  
*chin-shih* degrees, 638, 639  
 civil service exams, 516  
 claiming place in succession of Chinese imperial states, 249–50  
 collapse of, 379  
 conquered by Mongols, 364  
 element earth assigned to, 320

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

788

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

- founding of, 220–6  
 governmental system, 25–6  
 historical records of, 459–60  
 law code, 453  
 and Mongols, 331–2, 350–2, 445, 616, 622, 661  
 official history of, 573 (*see also Chin shib* (Chin history))  
 people of, 216–20  
 rise and fall of, 265  
 slavery, 38  
 and steppe tribes, 323–4  
 Temüjin ally of, 337–8  
 Chin emperors, 294; genealogy of, xxv *fig*  
 Chin empire, 154, 236–7 *map*; population of, 36  
 Chin era, 42; as period of transition, 319–20  
 Chin government/state, 1–2, 6, 11, 15, 92, 96, 361, 362, 631  
 absorbed into Mongolian empire, 290–1  
 Board of Palace Registers, 287  
 Bureau of National Historiography, 282, 283  
 as bureaucratic organization, 235, 249–50, 267, 268–73, 306  
 decline/fall of, 215, 245, 250, 258, 259–65, 262 *map*, 301, 302, 308  
 economic conditions, 291–304  
 ethnic groups, 279–91  
 ethnicity principle, 290–1  
 five-capital system of, 270  
 government structure, 265–77  
 internal dissension, 250–4  
 language problems in, 282–3  
 law in, 289–91  
 legitimacy of, 319  
 Mongol conquest of, 636  
 population of, 278 *tab*  
 as power in China, 235  
 religious life in, 313–19  
 rise of, 200  
 scholarship, literature, and the arts in, 304–13  
 scripts used in, 31  
 social classes in, 283–91  
 social structure, 277–9  
 Chin-hua prefecture, 581  
 Chin imperial clan, 230; conspiracy in, 243  
 Chin invasions, 145 *fig*  
 Chin-ling Mountains, 83  
 Chin-sha River 金沙, 405  
*Chin shib* (Chin history), 15, 217, 238, 239, 240, 273, 277–9, 283, 285, 289–90, 302, 310, 678–9; Yuan Hao-wen's biographies incorporated into, 308  
*chin-shib* degree 進士, 88, 96, 126, 208, 221, 271–2, 517, 604; and government employment, 269; Jurchen 272; in Yüan dynasty, 638, 639  
*chin-shib* degree holders, 565, 581; career opportunities of, 571; number of, 564; Uighurs, 611  
*chin-shib* examination, 136, 140; *see also* civil service examinations  
 Ch'in, Prince of 秦王, 143, 149, 150  
 Ch'in-chou 秦州, Kansu, 174, 175, 180  
 Ch'in tsung 欽宗 (Sung emperor) (r. 1126–7), 229, 232–3, 235  
 Ch'in Kuei 秦檣, 233  
 Ch'in-ai 欽哀 [皇后] (Empress Dowager, personal name Nou-chin 脳斤), 114–16, 124–5, 127, 129, 134  
 Ch'in-te 欽德, 51, 52  
 Ch'in-yang 沁陽, 505  
 China, 192, 395  
 at accession of Toghón Temür, 561–6  
 administration of, 427–9  
 alien rule over, 215–16  
 areas rebuilt in Mongol reforms, 400  
 authority of, 304  
 border administration, 169  
 census in, 401  
 as center of civilized world, 5, 43, 53  
 centralization of, by Ming, 584  
 Chin state as power in, 235

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

789

- conquest of, 43–4  
 cultural supremacy of, 1  
 differences between north and south, 657  
 Mongolian period in history of, 2, 41, 616–18  
 fragmentation of, 5–6, 16–17, 21  
 grand khans of, 411  
 and Hsia (Tangut), 157–8, 159, 191–2  
 Khubilai and, 418–22, 423–4, 428–9, 445–57  
*Liao (Khitan)* and, 53–6, 55 *fig.*, 64–75, 80–7  
 Mongol Secretariat in, 398  
 Mongolian attack on, 403–4, 405–7, 411, 417, 424, 449  
 Mongolian state incorporated into, 560  
 Mongolian tribes' interaction with, 328  
 northern border, 225  
 place of, in Mongolian empire, 490, 491, 492  
 political situation at borderlands of, 218–19  
 population of, 36–7  
 power configurations in, 161–2  
 provincial regimes, 54, 55, 56  
 rebellions in, 552  
 reunification of, 11, 17–18, 26, 83, 429, 578, 623, 657, 658  
 rival claimants as emperor of, 424–6  
 ruled by one fictitious "family," 19  
 social change in, 658  
 social structure, 643  
 strength/weakness of, 47  
 Superintendency of Paper Money, 402  
 surrounding peoples incorporated into, 3  
 taxation, 402  
 Toghōn Temür and end of Yüan rule in, 561–86  
 unity of, 21, 416, 475  
 Chinese adaptations to Mongol rule, 214, 627–40  
 antagonism toward foreigners, 13  
 in Chin (Jurchen) army, 120  
 in Chin (Jurchen) government, 268, 270, 271–3  
 dominated by Chin (Jurchen), 215  
 in government of Khubilai, 452  
 in government of Temür, 497  
 in Mongolian administration, 360–1, 362, 373, 375, 376, 415  
 in Mongolian military, 358, 363, 403, 408, 431, 442, 452, 453, 484, 601, 650, 651–3  
 in Yüan government, 563, 572, 573, 587, 596, 604, 624, 634–5  
 Chinese advisers to Khubilai, 416, 418–19, 420, 423, 426, 427, 446, 457, 458, 460, 587; loss of, 474–5  
 Chinese arts and letters, 38–9; patronage of, by Tugh Temür, 553–6, 560  
 Chinese auxiliaries (*Han chün* [Han armies]; *hei chün* [black armies]), 363  
 Chinese canonical tradition, 458  
 Chinese captives of Khitan, 54, 57, 59  
 Chinese Central Plains, 295  
 "Chinese cities" (*Han ch'eng*), 59, 88  
 Chinese civilization  
     common, 21  
     defense of, in Fei River battle, 242  
     effect of Mongol rule on, 617–18  
     influence of, 215, 239–40, 244–5, 284–5, 645–7 (*see also* Chinese influences)  
     Khubilai's distinguishing Mongolian heritage from, 471  
     new dynasties in, 623–4  
     shapes of, in north and south, 319  
 Chinese classics, 271; translations of, 459, 519–20  
 Chinese Commission for Military Affairs (*Han-jen Shu-mi yüan*), 78  
 Chinese court rituals, 446, 462  
 Chinese culture, 1, 39, 40, 42, 362,  
     in Chin (Jurchen) state, 306, 310  
     and foreign domination, 41

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

790

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

- incorporated into Liao (Khitan) rule, 67, 126
- influence of, 63, 68, 103, 156, 519
- Khubilai and, 465–71, 488
- Mongols indifferent to, 610, 611
- Chinese customs, 554
- Chinese dynasties, 42, 283, 427, 428, 516
  - institutions under, 268, 269
  - legal code, 454
  - legitimate succession of, 319–20
  - patronage of Buddhism, 314
  - restrictions on merchants, 449
  - treatment of occupational groups, 452
- Chinese education for future rulers, 579, 580; *see also* Confucian education of Mongol rulers
- Chinese elites, 491–2, 570; and foreign domination, 38–9, 40, 41; Khubilai and, 454; and Mongolian rule, 452, 569, 624, 625, 633–5; Western Asians changing relation to, 644–8; in Yüan state, 565; *see also* Confucian scholars
- Chinese government, 2, 3, 25; compromise with Yüan dynasty, 517; as model for Liao (Khitan), 79 (*see also* Chinese models); Mongolians' continuity/breaks with, 614–15, 616, 624, 625–7, 628, 629; *see also* T'ang government
- Chinese influences, 13–14, 132
  - on Chin (Jurchen), 265–70, 284, 288, 289–91
  - in construction of Mongolian capital city, 455–7
  - on government of Liao (Khitan), 91, 92, 93–4, 98, 116, 126–7, 130, 140
  - on governments of Mongolian empire, 364, 490, 520
  - in Khubilai's administration, 418, 419–20, 488–9
  - Mongolian adaptation to, 616
  - in Mongolian ideology, 348
  - nativist Khitan resistance to, 130–1
- on Tangut court, 192
- in Yüan bureaucracy, 605
- see also* Chinese models
- Chinese institutions: adoption/adaptation of, 3, 20; incorporation of foreign leaders into, 14–16
- Chinese–Jurchen glossary, 32
- Chinese language, 4, 8, 35, 154, 397
  - in Chin (Jurchen) government, 282
  - classical, 465
  - colloquial (*pai-hua*), 32–3, 465
  - colloquialized chancery, 563
  - government documents in, 67
  - known by tribal peoples, 57
  - as language of administration, 3, 31
  - as language of diplomacy, 20
  - literary, 32–3
  - Mongols illiterate in, 646
  - standard literary, 563
  - Western Asians' literacy in, 646–7
- Chinese law/legal code, 93–4, 518
- Chinese literati, 554, 569; and Mongol rule, 379–80, 609, 623, 629; recruited by Khubilai, 459; prestige of, 633; in Yüan government, 573, 636
- Chinese literature, 40; Khitan script used for, 283; translations of, 33–6
- Chinese Mahāyāna scriptural tradition, 154
- Chinese models, 3, 4, 14, 21; familiarity with, 10, 15–16; government, 25, 26, 154, 266, 269, 270, 473, 491, 493, 587–8
- Chinese Office (Han-erh ssu), 77
- Chinese officials: in administration of Yesün Temür, 537–8; in government of Khaishan, 512; in Liao (Khitan) government system, 64, 73–4, 77, 78; literate elite, 92
- Chinese People's Republic, 267–8
- Chinese populations/subjects, 31, 117
  - agriculture, 94
  - in Chin (Jurchen) state, 240, 246, 248, 250, 254, 259, 267, 269, 274, 275,

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

791

- 279, 281–2, 283–4, 286, 288, 291, 306, 311  
 favorable treatment of, 116  
 and foreign domination, 36–42  
 and Hai-ling wang's rule, 243  
 in Hsia (Tangut) empire, 154, 182, 186  
 integrative policy toward captured, 12  
 Liao (Khitan) administration of, 63–4, 67, 73–4, 76–80, 116, 149  
 rebellion among, 144  
 restrictions on, 131  
 in states of conquest, 28  
 taxation of, 195–6  
 Chinese populations/subjects  
   (Mongolian/Yüan), 560, 618–22;  
   corvée obligations, 448, 450, 451;  
   cultural and social relations, 491–2;  
   Khubilai and, 418–19, 421, 423–4, 427, 428–9, 436, 446–8, 454–8;  
   legal code for, 453–4; repressive measures applied to, by Bayan, 570–1  
 Chinese prefectures: acquisition of, by Liao (Khitan), 70, 76–7, 78  
 Chinese regimes: subservient to non-Han regimes, 70–1  
 Chinese rituals/musical ceremonies, 418, 446, 457, 462, 609  
 Chinese rulers, 63, 70; marriage customs, 286  
 Chinese scholar-officials, *see* scholar-officials  
 Chinese script, 31, 465, 467, 643–4  
 Chinese society: contribution of un/underemployed literati to, 638–40; and Mongol military system, 651–3; under Mongolian rule, 616–64; in Yüan times, 610–15  
 Ching *see* Mu-tsung (Ching; Shu-lü) (r. 951–69)  
 Ching-chao 京兆, 408–9  
 Ching-chou prefecture 靜州, 163, 167, 168  
 Ching-pien (later Ching-chou) 靜邊, 159, 160, 163  
 Ching-pien government-general, 159, 160  
*Ching shih ta tien* 經世大典 (Grand canon for governing the world), 555–6  
*ching-t'u* 淨土, 314  
*Ching-te-chen* 景德鎮, 470, 658  
 Ching-tsung 景宗, *see* Li Yüan-hao  
*ching-yen* 經筵, 512, 539–40, 550  
 Ching Yen 敬筵, 512  
 Ching Yen-kuang 景延廣, 72  
*ch'ing* 境, 292, 294  
 Ch'ing-chou 慶州, 115, 159–61, 165, 166  
 Ch'ing dynasty, 268, 283, 468; career advancement in, 596; civil service exams, 517; period, 307  
 Ch'ing-ning 清寧, 478  
 Ch'ing-t'ang 清唐, 186, 193, 195; as commercial and political center, 176, 179, 180; Sung occupation of, 196; Tibetan regime at, 194, 195  
 Ch'ing-t'ang (Kokonor) Tibetans; Tangut struggle against, 158  
*ch'ing t'ien-tzu* 青天子, 181  
 Ch'ing-yang 慶陽, 159  
 Chinggis khan, *see* Temüjin (Chinggis khan)  
 Chinggisid line, 24, 321, 347, 365–8, 374, 390–1, 396, 398  
 Chinkhai, 373, 376, 383, 386, 393–4, 396  
 儿  
*chiu* 組 military units (Chin), 207, 277  
*chiu tien* 舊典, 568  
*Chiu wu-tai shih* (History of the Five Dynasties), 33  
*Ch'iu-chien hsien-sheng ta-ch'üan wen-chi* 秋澗先生大金文集, 595–22  
 Ch'iu-ch'u-chi 丘處機 (Ch'ang-ch'un; Eternal Spring), 317  
 Ch'iu-tzu 龜茲, *see* Kucha, 155  
 Cho-chou 淮州, 470  
 Cho-lo 卓囉, *see* Ch'o-lo  
 Ch'o-lo 摶羅, 155, 194, 195, 213  
 Cho-lo Army Superintendance, 194

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

792

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

- Ch'ǒn 全 (later King Wǒnjong), 436–7  
 Ch'ǒng-ch'ǒn River 清州, 103  
 Chǒngjong, 102  
 Chong'ur 牀兀兒, 502, 542  
 Chormakhan, 368–70  
 Chou 周, 11, 81, 82, 84, 361, 582, 584  
     king of, 527  
     prince of, 521, 542  
 Chou prefecture 州, 270, 593, 595  
 Chou dynasty, 84  
*Chou li* (Rites of Chou), 556  
 Chou period, 20  
 Chou regime, 72, 82–3  
 Chou Ying-chi 周應極, 529  
 Christians, 364, 462–5, 643  
 Ch'u 楚 (ancient state), 85, 230  
 Ch'u ( puppet regime), 203  
 Ch'u (statelet), 202  
 Ch'u, prince of (title), 200  
*chu* 主, 188  
 Chu 朱, 655  
 Chu Ch'ing 朱清, 476, 499, 504, 612  
 Chu Hsi 朱熹, 305, 516, 517  
 Chu Wen 朱溫, 56, 57, 58, 61, 164  
 Chu Yüan-chang 朱元璋, 581, 583, 584,  
     655  
*chu-i fa* 脅役法, 531  
*chu-kung-tiao* 諸宮調, 309  
*chu-kuo jen* 諸國人, 630  
 Chu-li-chen 朱里真, 216  
 Chu-pu-ku 尤不姑 (Chih-pu-ku), 60  
 Chu-yeh Ch'ih-hsin 朱邪赤心, 163  
 Chü-yung Pass 居庸關, 35, 147, 150, 252,  
     351  
 Ch'u 楚, 203  
 Ch'u-chou prefecture, 581  
*ch'u-k'ou* (captives), 661–4  
 Ch'ü-fu 曲阜, 539, 553  
*ch'ü-k'ou* 驅口 614, 661  
 Ch'ü-shu 屈戍, 50, 51  
 Ch'ü-yeh River, 192  
 Ch'üan-chen sect 全真 (Taoist), 317–18,  
     364  
 Ch'üan-chou 泉州, 435, 482, 487, 599  
 Ch'üan-fu-ssu 泉府司, 600  
 Ch'üan Heng 權衡, 545–6  
 Ch'üan-nung ssu 勸農司, 447, 598  
 Chuang-lang 莊浪 (Hsi-Fan) tribes, 201,  
     202  
 Chuang-tzu 莊子, 155  
 Ch'uang-wu-erh 牀兀兒, 502, 542  
*ch'üeb-ch'ang* 權場, 178  
 Chün 潛, Prince (Yeh-lu-wo) (canonized as  
     Shun-tsung), 133, 135, 136, 139  
 Ch'un 淳 (Nieh-li) (reigned as emperor of  
     Pei-Liao 1122; canonized as Hsüan-  
     tsung), 135, 142–4, 147–9  
*chün* 軍, 650  
*chün bu* 軍戶, 649  
 Ch'un-ch'in, Empress 淳欽 (later entitled  
     Empress Dowager Ying-t'ien),  
     68–9  
*Ch'un-ch'iü* (Spring and autumn annals), 33  
 Ch'un-chou 春州, 144  
 Ch-un-chou circuit, 222  
*chün-mu shih* 群牧使, 277  
 Ch'un-yu; *see* Huan-tsung (Ch'un-yu)  
     (r. 1193–1206)  
 Chung ching 中京, 98  
*Chung-chou chi* 中州集 (Collections of the  
     central districts) (Yüan Hao-wen),  
     307–8  
 Chung-hsing 中興, 154; Hsi Hsia capital,  
     194, 208, 349; coup in, 207; Mongol  
     conquest of, 213–14, 364, 365  
 Chung-i Guard 忠翊, 548  
 Chung-ning, prince of, 548  
 Chung-shan prefecture 中山, 227, 228  
 Chung-shu ( province), 544, 551  
*chung-shu ling* 中書令, 88, 167, 200, 427, 589  
 Chung-shu sheng 中書省 (Central  
     Secretariat); *see* Central Secretariat  
 Chung-t'ung 中統, 423, 511, 514  
*Chung-t'ung yüan-pao-ch'ao* 中統元 (paper  
     currency), 449, 511, 514  
 Chung-tu 中都, 16, 375  
     renamed Yen, 358  
     sacked and destroyed, 351, 352, 362–3

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

793

- Chung-tu 中都 (palace city; modern P'ai-ch'eng-tzu), 509, 545
- Chung-yüan 重元, 114n105, 115–16, 122, 124–5; revolt of, 127–8, 129, 130
- Ch'ung-ch'ing 重慶, 410
- Ch'ung-fu ssu 崇福司, 464
- Ch'ung-hun hou 重昏候, 232
- Ch'ung-tsung 崇宗 (Wei-ming Ch'ien-shun; Hsia emperor) (r. 1086–1139), 191, 194; death of, 199; reign of, 197–9
- church-state relationship, under Khubilai, 461–2
- circuits, 79
- circuits (*lu* 路), 427
- circuits (*tao* 道), 593, 594
- “circulating treasure of the Chih-ta era” (copper coins) (*Chih-ta t'ung-pao*), 511
- “circulating treasure of the great Yüan” (copper coins) (*Ta-yüan t'ung-pao*), 511
- cities, 35, 38, 67, 467; Chinese plan, 59, 63; fortified, 359–60, 410; isolation of, by Mongols, 362, 365; Sung, 430; under Yüan rule, 657–60
- civil authority, 4, 587, 588, 592, 593, 600, 624; and military authority, 601–2, 648–9; under Sung, 85
- civil service, 516, 631, 634–5, 643; Confucian literati, 637–8
- civil service examinations, 418, 427, 539, 570, 596, 634, 639
- abolished/suspended, 445, 452, 467, 471, 489, 636
- and career opportunities for educated Chinese, 570
- and Chin (Jurchen) government, 268, 273
- north China, 379–80
- racial quota system, 517
- reinstated, 560, 637
- revival of, under Ayurbarwada, 515–17
- and social mobility, 627
- see also chin-shih degree; chin-shih examinations*
- civil wars, 6, 12, 42, 49, 411–13
- civilian artisans, 653–4
- civilian (*min*) households, 650
- civilian officials, 589, 593–4
- civilian-soldier principle, 649
- “civilized” Jurchen (*shu Nü-chih*), 110, 141, 219
- clan affiliation (Chin), 230, 268–9
- clan-dominated leadership: shift to monarchic autocracy, 239
- clan names (Jurchen), 285
- clans (*obogh*), 321
- class system: Yüan social structure, 610–11; *see also* social classes
- classics colloquium (*ching-yen*), 512, 539–40, 550
- Clement IV, Pope, 463
- clergy, 452
- clerical personnel/clerks: in government service, 350, 397, 515–16, 564, 571, 596–7
- client lineages (Mongolian tribes), 331
- climate, 41, 430
- “close attendants” (Chin government), 276
- “Code of law of the age of celestial prosperity” (*T'ien-sheng chiu kai hsin ting chin ling*), 203–4
- codification of law, *see* law code(s) (legal code)
- coexistence, Chin–Sung, 226–35, 246–7, 248–9
- coinage, coins, 35–6; Chin, 300; Khitan, 96–7; Mongol empire, 383, 402; reign of Khaishan, 511
- Coleridge, Samuel Taylor, 457
- collegial principle: Mongolian administration, 386–7, 398
- colonialism, Yüan, 492
- command economies, 38
- commander in chief (Khitan) (*yü-yüeh*), 77, 90, 125

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

794

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

- commanders (Mongolian) (*nöyan*), 346  
 commanding prefect (*chieh-tu shih*), 14  
 commerce, 54, 299, 445, 566; postal relay stations in, 450; taxes on, 479, 566, 575; *see also* trade  
 commercial tax (*tamgha*), 401; Chin, 304  
 Commission for Military Affairs (*Shu-mi yüan*), 78  
 commissioner for Buddhist and Tibetan affairs (*hsüan-cheng yüan shih*), 510  
 commissioner for military affairs (*shu-mi shih*), 77, 89, 90  
 commissioner for ritual observances (*t'ai-ch'ang li-i shih*), 530  
 commissioner of herds (*ch'ün-mu shih*), 277, 293  
 commodities, 294–6, 297, 303, 304, 553  
 commonality of Mongolian tribes, 325–6  
 commoners (*min*), 30; Jurchens, 272, 275, 276; Mongolian tribes, 325; Yüan China, 648–56  
 communications, 94; Chin state, 297–9, 305; structure of, 588  
 concubinage, concubines, 189, 198, 239, 288–9  
 confederation: Mongolian tribes, 329, 342  
 Confucian classics, 74, 137, 554; translations of, 33–4, 310  
 Confucian canon: in preparation for government service, 571  
 Confucian cult, Hsia, 199  
 Confucian education, 530  
 Confucian education of Mongol rulers, 126, 507, 513, 529  
 Confucian elite: and rebellions, 663; *see also* Confucian scholars  
 Confucian households (*ju-bu*), 635–8  
 Confucian institutions: introduced into Hsia state, 199–200  
 Confucian literati, 635, 636–7, 639, *see also* Confucian scholars  
 Confucian moral–political revolution, 581–2  
 Confucian rituals, 553, 609; reinstated by Khubilai, 454, 458; state sacrifices, 574  
 “Confucian rule of the Yen-yu era” (Yeh-yu Ju-chih), 526  
 Confucian scholars, 38, 420, 449, 636 Khubilai and, 418, 455 and Mongolian rule, 473 propagation of views of, 459–60 in reign of Temür, 498 status of, 446, 491, 492, 634 *see also* scholar-officials  
 Confucian schoolteachers, 564  
 Confucian writings: on regionalization of Yüan rule, 582–3  
 Confucianism, 40, 41, 94, 197, 317, 427, 462, 584 basis for elite recruitment, 517 Chin, 305 and fall of state(s), 265, 268–9 in government of Tugh Temür, 553–4, 556 and historiographical projects, 459 in Hsia state, 203 influence of, 645 influence on Ayurbarwada, 513, 514–15, 516, 517, 519, 520, 522, 526 Khubilai and, 415–16, 446, 457, 458, 460 in medicine, 451 in reign of Temur, 497–8 in reign of Yesün Temür, 539, 540 and scholar-official elite, 627 Shidebala and, 529, 532 and Yüan state, 560  
 Confucius, 271; sacrifices to, 553; shrine to, in Ta-tu, 457; tomb, 623  
 conquered peoples: treatment of, by Khitans, 59, 79  
 conqueror–conquered differentiation: under Mongols, 630–1  
 conquest society, 565  
 conquest states, 20; modes of government, 21–30

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

795

- conscription, 13, 37, 107, 274, 452, 648–9
- conservatism, 319, 497
- consort clans, 198, 202, 533
- consorts, 87, 169, 286, 494, 563, 580
- conspiracy(ies); Chin (Jurchen), 239, 243; Liao (Khitan) government, 76, 81, 82, 84, 127–8, 134, 135–6, 142, 143–4, 146–7; Yüan state, 528, 530, 532–4
- construction projects, 509, 522; of Khubilai, 473, 478
- copper, 299–300, 426
- copper cash, 96–7
- corporal punishment, 29–30
- corruption, 161, 166, 276, 428, 504; in household classification system, 655–6; in Hsia (Tangut) government, 198, 200; in Liao court, 39, 137n208; in reign of Ayurbarwada, 525; in reign of Khubilai, 474, 475, 478, 480; in reign of Temür, 499, 500; in Yüan government, 578, 582, 583, 584, 585; Sung, 430; in Yüan military, 576–7
- corvée-assistance scheme (*chu-i fa*), 531
- corvée obligations/service, 63, 96, 117–20, 531; Chinese peasants, 448; exemptions from, 607, 613, 650; under Khubilai, 448, 450, 451; of *ortogh* merchants, 612
- cosmopolitanism: Yüan culture, 472–3
- councillor of the left (*tso ch'eng-hsiang*), 589; *see also* grand councillor of the left
- councillor of the right (*yu ch'eng-hsiang*), 589, *see also* grand councillor of the right
- counterfeiting, 97, 589
- county (*hsien*), 270, 593, 595
- countryside: and foreign domination, 38; and multilinguality, 35
- coups, 69; Bayan, against El Temür, 567–8, 573; Liao (Khitan), 87, 127–8; at Nan-p'o, 532–4, 535–7; removal of Bayan from chancellorship, 572; Yüan state, 541–2, 543, 547, 549
- courier system, 95, 297–8
- court attendants (*chin-shih*), 508
- court beatings, 29–30
- Court Council (Men-hsia sheng) (Chin government), 269
- court diarists, 92
- court documents, script for, 465–7
- court etiquette, 589
- court intrigue, Censorate and, 603–4
- court ritual, 192, 193, 446, 462, 589; Mongols, 608–10
- crafts, craftsmen, 294–7, 445, 455, 643; Khubilai's support for, 465, 470, 471; in Mongolian manpower mobilization, 403; status of, 448–9, 465, 472
- creation myth (Mongols), 330–1, 342
- crime and punishment, 289–91, 314, 453–4
- cultural development: under Mongol rule, 642–3
- cultural diversity: Yüan China, 643–4
- cultural identity, 1, 9, 67, 178–9
- cultural orientations: of mid-Yüan rulers, 558; in Yüan government, 494
- cultural pluralism, 645
- cultural policy: of Khubilai, 472–3
- cultural relations: in Yüan rule in China, 569
- cultural unity, 21
- cultural values (Chinese), 553–4
- culture
- Chin, 40
  - ethnic groups in Mongolian empire, 465
  - Mongolian empire, 491–2
  - Po-hai, 3
  - in reign of Yesün Temür, 539–40
  - steppe tribes, 323
  - Tangut, 156–7, 203

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

796

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

- twelfth century, 196  
*see also* Chinese culture
- currency: Chin, 299–301; types of, under Khubilai, 449; *see also* paper money
- customary law, 28, 93, 94; codification of, 131
- Dalan Baljud, battle of, 337
- Darindari, 548
- darkhan* (title), 547
- Darmabala 答刺麻八刺, 502, 505; descendants of, 538–9, 543
- Darmashiri, 538
- darughachi* (officers), 373–4, 398
- darughachi* (commissioners), 460
- darughachi* (overseers), 521, 593, 595–6, 598, 607, 611, 615
- Dash Temür 達識帖睦邏, 583
- Dashman 答失蠻, 540
- Daula-shah 倒刺沙, 535, 537, 541, 543, 544
- Dayisun, 360
- decentralization, 580; feudal, 582; of government, 578; military, 183; Mongolian empire, 387; of relief efforts, 574
- defectors, in Mongolian army, 358, 359, 360–1
- defender in chief (*t'ai-wei*), 548
- Dei Sechen, 333, 335
- dependent states: and Mongolian administration, 373–4, 394
- dependents (mongolian tribes), 325–6
- deputy prime ministers (*ch'eng-hsiang*), 78
- descent groups: Mongolian tribes, 324–6
- descent line(s): Mongols, 330, 331, 336
- despotism, 26, 30
- Dhūta sect, 316
- Dhyāni Buddhas, 315
- dictatorship, of El Temür and Bayan, 547–9, 553, 556, 559
- diets/tribal convocations, *see* *kburiltai*
- al-Din, Rashid, 331, 343, 345, 407, 422, 431, 494, 497
- al'Dîn, 'Alâ, 433
- al-Dîn, Jalâl, 356–7, 368–70
- al-Dîn, Jâmal, 451
- al-Dîn, Nâsir, 485
- diplomacy, 19, 20, 21; embassies in, 222; Hsia (Tangut), 170, 192; Liao (Khitan), 137, 142; T'ang, 5
- diplomatic documents, 182, 223
- diplomatic protocol: Sung court, 189
- diplomatic relations, 43
- Chin (Jurchen), 224, 266;
- Chin (Jurchen)/Hsia, 208, 254, 262
- Chin (Jurchen)/Mongols, 331–2
- Hsia (Tangut), 180
- Koryô/Sung, 102–3
- Liao (Khitan), 72, 98
- Liao (Khitan)/Chin, 223
- Liao (Khitan)/Sung, 85, 109–10
- Mongols, 348, 492
- Sung/Chin (Jurchen), 241, 247, 249, 261
- Sung/Hsi Hsia, 148
- director (*bsiang-wen*), 89
- directorates (*chien*) (Khitan), 79
- Dobun Mergen, 330
- domestic policy: Hsia, 197; of Khubilai, 482
- Dominicans, 60–8
- Dorji 朵兒赤, 416
- drama, 40; *see also* Yuan drama (*tsa-chü*)
- dress regulations, Hsia, 182
- drinking, drunkenness: Hsi-tsung, 235; Liao (Khitan) nobles, royalty, 81, 82, 84, 94; Khubilai, 488; Mongol rulers, 387; Ögödei, 382; Temür, 494, 504
- droughts, 205, 247, 254, 551, 565, 585
- Du'a 篤哇, 501–4, 507, 542
- dynastic histories, 44; Khubilai, 459–60; translations of, 33–4
- dynastic names: Khitan, 73; Khubilai, 458
- dynasties of conquest, 11, 14, 16, 43, 215, 273, 490
- court beatings, 29–30
- and development of Chinese society, 42

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

797

- government, 23–7  
 interpreters, 31  
 levies and requisitions, 38  
 multilinguality, 35  
 realpolitik, 18–19  
 sinicization under, 284–5  
 and translations, 33  
 Yüan as, 517, 560
- dynasty(ies): Chinese-style, 78–9; end of, 265; establishing new, 222
- dynasty emblems, powers (agents) in, 249–50
- Dzungaria, 65
- earthquakes, 199, 565
- East Asia, 2, 5, 200, 205; balance of power in, 203, 206; cultures of, 156–7; Mongolian conquests in, 617; multistate system, 222, 239; political organization of, 18–21
- Eastern Capital (*Liao-yang*) (*Chin*), 257, 258, 279
- Eastern Capital (*Liao/Khitan*), 70, 79, 98, 113, 125, 142; coinage manufactured in, 97; uprising at, 144, 146
- Eastern Capital circuit, 112, 116–17; natural disasters, 132
- Eastern Mongolian Chief Military Command (*Tung-lu Meng-ku chün tu yüan-shuai fu*), 544
- Eastern Turkish (*T'u-chüeh*) khaghanate, 159
- ecological frontier, 8–9
- economic abuses: reign of Khubilai, 478–82
- economic conditions, Mongolian tribes, 326–9
- economic policies: of Ayurbarwada, 522–3; of Khubilai, 445–54, 489; Mongolian empire, 383–4 Yüan, 613
- economic problems, reign of Khubilai, 473–8
- economic relations, threat of war in (Mongols), 328
- economy based on pastoralism, 11  
*Chin* (*Jurchen*), 217, 244, 275–6, 290, 291–304  
 Chinese, 42  
*Hsia* (*Tangut*), 196–7  
 importance of southern China to Yüan, 612–13  
*Liao* (*Khitan*), 94  
 Mongol, 325, 330  
 north China, 380–1  
 slaves in, 614  
 Sung, 429, 430  
 in Yüan times, 660
- education in China, 445  
 Chinese-style, 126  
 Confucian commitment to, 639  
*Hsia* (*Tangut*), 203  
*Liao* (*Khitan*), 126  
 of physicians, 451  
 reform of *Chin*, 244  
 universal, 447–8  
 Yüan government and, 607  
*see also* Confucian education of Mongol rulers; schools, schooling
- Edward I, king of England, 465
- Edzina (*O-chi-na*; *Khara-khoto*), 154
- El Tegüs 燕鐵木兒, 557, 567, 573
- El Temür 燕鐵木兒, 525, 542–3, 544, 550, 557, 567, 611; Bayan's coup against, 568; joint dictatorship with Bayan, 547–9, 553, 556, 559; and regicide, 545–6
- Eleanor of Aquitaine, 414
- elections (*Khitans*), 52, 58–9, 61–3, 76
- elite culture: and popular culture, 640–3
- elite recruitment to government service, 516; ascriptive criteria in, 515, 516; Confucian learning as basis for, 517
- elite roles: diffusion of, 638–40, 641–2, 643

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

798

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

- elite status, 627–8
- elites, 4, 611–12; traditional and new, 627–35, 648; two-tiered, 633–4
- Eljigidei, 388, 539, 545, 550
- elopement, 288
- “Emaciated army” (*shou chün*), 148
- embassies, 8, 19, 20, 222; Chin, 239, 241, 261; Liao (Khitan), 54, 71, 109, 124, 144; Mongol, to Japan, 437, 442
- emperor (*huang-ti*), 19; bodyguards, 22–3; household of, 22–3; title assumed by A-kuta, 221–2, 223
- emperor (*huang-ti*) rank, 232
- empress dowagers, 77; Ch'eng-t'ien, 87–91, 93; Chin (Jurchen), 241; Hsieh, 434; Liao (Khitan), 105, 107, 109, 111, 149, 150; Nou-chin, 114–15, 116; Tangut, 191, 192, 193, 194, 195, 202, 207; Ying-t'ien, 75–6, 89
- empresses: Liao (Khitan), 68, 190, 430
- epidemics, 41, 263, 565, 585
- erh-shui hu* 二稅戶, 287
- Erke'ün 也里可溫, 540
- Esen Temür 也先帖木兒 (grandson of Khubilai), 485–7, 532–3, 536
- established pattern (*ch'eng-kuei*), 507; preservation of, 496
- estates: Mongolian tribes, 325–6
- Eternal Heaven (Möngke Tenggeri) (god), 347
- ethnic affiliations: of Khitan, 45
- ethnic classes, in Yüan society, 610–11
- ethnic cohesion, in Yüan government, 563–4
- ethnic elites, in Mongol society, 611, 615
- ethnic groups, 39
  - Chin, 267, 279–91
  - in China, 428
  - and *darughachi*, 595–6
  - and examination system, 564–5
  - in imperial guard, 601
  - in Jurchen clans, 286
  - in Khubilai's administration, 426, 427
- legal cases involving, 591
- legal treatment of, 27, 28
- in Mongolian army, 601
- in Mongolian empire, 465, 466
- offices set aside for, 611
- rights of, to rituals, 589–90
- in Yüan government, 563
- ethnic identity, 9, 39, 45
- ethnic minorities, revolts by, 551–2
- ethnic preference, institutionalized, 565
- ethnic separation: bedrock of Yüan rule in China, 569–70
- ethnicity, and legal system, 29
- ethnicity principle (Chin state), 290–1
- ethnogenesis (Mongols), 329
- eunuchs, 430, 431
- Eurasia, 2, 43, 366; caravan trade, 443; Mongol campaigns in, 357, 368, 370, 384, 421
- Eurasian steppes, 341
- Europe, Batu's invasion of, 369 *map*
- Europeans, Khubilai's efforts to recruit, 463–5
- ever-normal granaries (*ch'ang-p'ing ts'ang*), 511–12
- examination essays, model, 34
- examination degrees (*chin-shih*): Hsia state, 199–200
- “Examination for the worthy and good” (*Hsien-liang k'o*), 126
- examination system, 38, 88, 91–2, 126, 130, 573; Chin (Jurchen), 271–2, 306; Confucian, 564–5; *see also chin-shih* examinations; civil service examinations
- examinations: for monks and nuns, 314, 316–17
- expansionism: Chin (Jurchens), 262, 266, 267; Mongolian empire, 18, 484, 492, 501, 558
- export trade: Chin (Jurchen), 217
- “extended Chinese world,” frontier of, 10
- exogamy, 288–9

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

799

- Fa-yen* 法言 (Yang Hsiung), 271
- factionalism: Censorate in, 603–4; Chin court, 254; court of Shidebala, 530; in reign of Ayurbarwada, 524–7; Yüan state, 559–60, 585
- family(ies): in Chin state, 278, 288, 290; household classification of, 286–7, 632–4
- family law, 28, 290
- famine, 113, 132, 146, 565, 585; Chin, 254, 263; Hsia, 199; north China, 205
- famine relief, 569
- fan* 藩, 187, 281
- Fan Chung-yen 范仲淹, 187
- Fan Meng, 572
- Fan Wen-hu 范文虎, 482
- Fan-yang 范陽, 49, 50
- Fang Kuo-chen 方國珍, 575, 577, 581, 582, 583, 584
- Fang La 方臘, 149
- farms, farming, 67, 566; *see also* agriculture federations, 12, 16, 18; tribal groups absorbed into, 13
- Fei-hu 飛狐, 99
- Fei River battle, 242
- Fen chiao lu* 焚椒錄, 127, 128, 130, 133
- fen ssu-nung-ssu* 分司農司, 577
- fen-ti* 分地, 428, 607, 612
- Feng Ch'eng-chün 馮承鈞, 547
- Feng-hsiang 凰翔, 164, 359–60
- Ferghana, 4
- feudal decentralization, pattern of, 582
- feudalism, 21–2, 614
- feudalization, 362
- figure painting tradition, 39
- filial piety, 526
- financial administration/policy: Khubilai's problems with, 471, 473–5, 479, 484; in reign of Tugh Temür, 552–3; north China, 380–1; of Shidebala, 531, 532
- financial institutions, Mongolian state, 350
- financial problems: caused by expansion of bureaucracy, 509–10; in Yüan government, 492, 500–1, 559
- First Fish Feast, 140
- fiscal crisis: of Khashan, 510–12
- fiscal management: census taking for, 620, 629
- fiscal obligation, reapportionment of, 581
- fiscal policy: of Ayurbarwada, 522–3, 526; Chin, 301, 302; of Khaishan, 511–12; Mongolian empire, 383–4, 496; reign of Temür, 497; of Tugh Temür, 549–53
- fiscal reform: Mongolian empire, 375–8, 380
- fiscal system, Yüan, 618
- Five Classics, 271, 517
- Five Divisions (*wu yüan pu*), 128
- Five Dynasties (Wu Tai), 5, 16, 21, 33, 75–6, 78, 79, 82, 163, 165; diplomatic relations, 103
- “five-household silk households” (*wu-hu-ssu hu*) system, 522
- “Five Nations” (*wu-kuo*), 141, 218, 220
- “five zones of submission,” 3
- flamethrower (“fire lance”), 263–4, 430
- floods, 132, 551, 565, 585; Yellow River, 245, 246, 247, 256
- food prices, 511–12
- food production: Chin state, 293
- food shortages, 113, 447
- food supply: Hsia (Tangut), 196–7
- food transport, 297
- foreign domination, 35–6, 43; Han Chinese under, 36–42
- foreign expeditions, of Khubilai, 482–8, 501
- foreign leaders of local regimes, 6–7
- foreign policy: of Khubilai, 482, 492; Chin (Jurchen), 229, 302, 319; Chin (Jurchen)-Sung, 226–35; Liao (Khitan), 91, 98–114, 120–3, 137–8; *see also* diplomatic relations

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

800

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

- foreign trade: Chin state, 297–9; state monopoly over, 523; taxes on, 475; Yüan, 599–600
- foreigners, 11–14, 27, 42, 45, 479; intellectual elites, 33; and multilinguality, 31, 35; in Yüan government state, 561, 563, 564, 569, 570
- forest tribes, 348, 356
- Former Shu (state), 163
- fortification: Chin, 244, 246
- Four Books, 517
- fragmentation bombs, 430
- Franciscans, 608
- fraternal relations: Chin/Hsia, 210; Liao/Chin, 222–3
- frontier, 7–10, 81, 83; Koryō, 112; Liao (Khitan), 61, 71, 85, 86, 99, 100, 110, 111; manpower/military, service, 117–20; *see also* borders
- frontier fortifications, 142
- frontier markets, 187; *see also* border markets
- frontier populations, 14
- frontier raids/wars, 98, 332; *see also* border raids
- fu* 府 (superior prefecture) 270, 593, 595
- Fu Chien, 242
- Fu-chou 福州, 434, 435
- Fu-chou prefecture 府州, 164, 167
- Fu-yen circuit 鄭延路, 187
- Fukien, 434, 476
- Gendai kōtōkan no taikeiteki kenkyū* 元代勾當官の體系的研究, 596–24
- genealogy(ies)
- Chin emperors, xxv *fig*
  - Hsia ruling house, xxiii *fig*
  - Jurchen rulers, xxv *fig*
  - Liao, xxi *fig*
  - Mongolian rulers, xxvii *fig*
  - Mongolian tribes, 325, 326
- General Administration for the Supervision of the *Ortogh* (Wo-t'o tsung-kuan fu), 449, 600
- gentleman painter (ideal), 312
- geographers, geography, 306, 451–2
- Georgia, 403, 412
- gifts, in national budget (Chin), 302–3
- goats, 326, 327
- Gobi Desert, 65, 66, 154, 349; Mongolian tribes in, 323, 327
- Golden Horde, 383, 384, 395, 402, 404, 617; census, 401; and election of Khubilai, 423; khan of, 444; and succession struggle, 454
- governance
- Chinese scholar-officials' rules for, 467
  - Hsia (Tangut), 158, 159
  - by Khubilai, 426–7, 436, 446, 471, 473, 482, 491
  - loyalty in (Mongolian), 361–2
  - Mongol, 588
  - Mongolian empire, 374, 380, 386–7, 398
  - Yüan, 614–15, 616, 624, 625–7, 628, 629
- see also* administration; government; local government; regional government
- government, 2, 220
- Chin, 265–77, 313–14
  - dynasties of conquest, 25–7
  - forms of, 215
  - mid-Yüan, 560
  - models of, 42 (*see also* Chinese models)
  - modes of, 21–30
  - Mongolian state, 344, 497
  - moving, with hunting circuit, 64
  - racially and ideologically balanced, 497
  - sub-metropolitan, 593–7
  - Sung, 85
  - T'ang, 8
  - of Temür, 496
  - tension between Chinese and Mongol traditions, 563
  - Toghtō's vision of possibilities of, 575–7, 578
- see also* central government

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

801

- government (Hsia/Tangut), 182, 183–6, 197; civilian, 198, 203; Confucianism in, 199–200
- government (Liao/Khitani), 64, 66; changes in, 91–8; dual system of, 67–8, 73–4, 267–8
- government (Yüan), 561, 565–6, 572–3, 587–608; annual trips to summer capital, 562; Chinese in, 634–5; of Khubilai, 452, 507; multiplication of jurisdictional levels, 603
- government agencies, specialized, 597–600
- government artisans, 653, 654
- government expenditure: in chancellorship of Bayan, 569; in reign of Khaishan, 509–10, 512; Yüan, 492, 522–3, 582
- government institutions: developed by Khubilai, 423–4, 446; development of Liao (Khitani), 76–80
- government personnel: expansion of, under Temür, 498; recruitment and service (Mongolian empire), 397–8
- government policy, 7; under Ayurbarwada, 513, 514; under Empress Bulukhan, 504–5; mid-Yüan period, 558; under Temür, 496–8; Yüan state, 494
- government revenues: Hsia state, 154; Liao (Khitani), 95–6, 110; natural disasters and, 132; in reign of Khaishan, 510–12; in reign of Toghön Temür, 574–5, 576; in reign of Tugh Temür, 552–3; Yüan state, 566
- government service: Han Chinese in, 39, 40, 41; need for literate men in, 38
- government workshops (Chin), 296
- governments-general (*tu-tu-fu*), 8, 14
- governors (*darugbachi*), 23
- grain production, 304
- grain reserves, 303, 455, 552
- grain shipments, 574–5, 577
- grain taxes, 448, 511
- grain transport system, 476–8, 477 *map*, 566
- granaries, 447, 511–12, 599
- Grand Agricultural Administration, Commissioner for (*Ta ssu nung*), 533
- Grand Bureau of Agriculture (*Ta Ssu-nung ssu*), 597–9, 601
- Grand Canal, 448, 578, 613, 659–60; lengthening of, 449–50, 455, 476–8
- grand councillor(s), 522–3, 530–1
- grand councillor of the left (*tso ch'eng-hsiang*)
- Akhutai, 505
  - Baiju, 529–31
  - Bayan, 548
  - Daula-shah, 537
  - Hargasun, 496, 507
  - Toghtō, 510
- grand councillor of the right (*yu ch'eng-hsiang*)
- Bayan as, 567
  - Daula-shah, 541
  - El Temür, 547–8
  - Esen Temür, 536
  - Hargasun, 505, 506
  - Kümeijil, 534
  - Öljei, 495, 496
  - in reign of Yesün Temür, 537
  - Tas Bukha, 512
  - Temüder, 521, 524–5, 528
  - Toghtō terms as, 572–3, 575–80, 603–4
- Grand Court of Judicial Review (*Ta-li ssu*), 591
- Grand Court of the Imperial Clan (*Ta tsung-cheng fu*), 591
- grand empress dowager (*t'ai-huang t'ai-hou*) (title), 125
- grand guardian (*t'ai-pao*) (title), 548
- grand mentor (*t'ai-fu*) (title), 548
- grand preceptor (title), 547
- grand preceptor of the heir apparent (*t'ai-tzu t'ai-shih*), 525
- grand prime minister (*ta ch'eng-hsiang*), 78

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

802

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

- Grand Unity (*T'ai-i*) sect, 318  
 grants (*sui-tz'u* 歲賜), 500  
 Great Ch'i, 230–2  
 Great Hsia (*Ta Hsia*), king of, 177  
 Great Khingan Range, 323  
 Great Kings, Northern/Southern  
     (*Pei Ta-wang*, *Nan Ta-wang*), 77  
 Great Metropolis (*Ta-tu*), 16; *see also* *Ta-tu*  
 Great Mongols, 333, 386  
 Great Temple (*T'ai miao*), *see* Imperial Shrine  
 Great Tradition (Confucian scholarship), 305  
 Great Wall, 7, 53, 244, 250, 291, 328, 544  
 Greater Liao, 73  
 group privilege: in Chin bureaucracy, 271, 272  
 guard/household establishment (Mongol) 373, 397  
 guard members (*kesigden*), 23; *see also* *kesig*  
*Güchülgü* 屈出律, 354, 356  
 guerrilla warfare, 73, 74; steppe nomads, 443–4  
*Gunadara*, 557; *see also* *El Tegüs*  
 gunpowder, 263  
*gurkhan* (universal khan) (title), 339  
*güre'en* (encampment), 325  
*Güyüg* 貴由 (*Ting-tsung*; Mongolian khaghan) (r. 1246–58), 383–90, 398, 401; death of, 388–90, 391; profligacy of, 386, 388  
 gyrfalcons (*hai tung ch'ing*), 141
- Ha-la-ha-sun* 哈刺哈孫, 496; *see also* *Harghasun*  
*Hai-lang*, 266, 298, 300  
*Hai-ling*, prince of 海陵王 (*Ti-ku-nai*; Wan-yen Liang) (r. as emperor 1150–61), 13, 19, 25, 26, 239–43, 275, 281, 294, 311, 313, 314; proliferation of offices under, 269–70  
*Hai-pin wang* 海賓王, 151  
*Hai-shan* 海山, 502
- Hai-tu* 海都  
*hai-tung ch'ing* [hu] 海東青[鶴], 141  
*Hai-yün* 海雲, 364, 415, 416, 418, 458, 460  
 Hainan Island, 538, 542  
 Hairstyle(s), 40, 46, 281  
*Hakata*, 442  
*Hami*, 4, 5  
 Han armies (*Han chün*) 漢軍, 601, 649, 650, 662  
*Han ch'eng* 漢城, 59  
*Han Chih-ku* 韓知古, 88  
 Han Chinese 漢, 1–2, 8–9, 11, 45, 361; under alien domination, 36–42; conscription from, 37; in Chin (Jurchen) army, 13; in Liao (Khitan) federation, 12  
 Han court, 166, 167, 192  
 Han dynasty (948–51), 1, 6, 72, 75–6, 80–1, 450; capital of, 623; fall of, 167, 362; treaties, 18  
*Han-erb ssu* 漢兒司, 77, 88  
 Han family, 89  
*Han-jen* 漢人, 428, 604, 631–2; in Yüan class system, 610  
*Han Jo-yü* 韓若愚, 528  
*Han-k'ou* 漢口, 435  
*Han K'uang-ssu* (1) 韓匡嗣, 88, 89  
 Han-lin Academy 翰林院, 38, 79, 93, 201, 452, 460, 515, 606  
 Han-lin academician recipient of edicts, 538; scholars appointed to, 88, 531  
 Han-lin and National History Academy 翰林國史院 (*Han-lin chien kuo-shih yüan*), 460, 605  
 Han-lin yüan, *see* Hanlin Academy  
*Han-p'u* 函普, 219, 313  
 Han River, 431  
*Han-shu* (History of the Han dynasty), 33, 130  
 Han-tan, 107  
*Han Te-jang* 韓德讓, 88–90, 104, 105, 114  
*Han Te-wei* 韓德威, 89, 104  
*Han Te-yüan* 韓德源, 89  
*Han T'o-chou* 韓侂胄, 247, 249

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

803

- Han Ts'ung-i 韓從益, 531  
 Han Yen-hui 韓延徽, 64, 95–6  
 Hang-chou, 17, 34; description of life in 659; Sung capital at, 233, 249, 305, 430, 433, 434  
 Hangchow 杭州, 583, 657–9  
 Hangchow fire (1341), 574  
 Hao Ching 郝經, 424, 431  
 Hao T'ien-t'ing 郝天挺, 515  
 Harât, 356, 394  
 Harbin, 140  
 Harghasun, 496–8, 546, 548, 558–9; and succession struggle, 505, 506, 507  
 Hasan Khoja, 537  
 head-shaving decree (Hsia), 181–2  
 head tax (*khubchir*), 401–2, 448  
 headmaster (*shan-chang*), 607  
 Heart sutra, 317  
*heibao* 黑號, 285  
 Hei-lü, 528  
 Hei-shui (Edzina) 黑水, 207, 211  
 Hei-shui Mo-ho 黑水靺鞨, 218  
 Heilungkiang, 10, 44, 102, 139, 141  
 heir(s) apparent, 79, 505, 507; role in government, 589; Yüan, 494, 513, 522, 527, 542, 545, 557, 567, 578–80; *see also* succession  
 Hen-mu-chin, 127  
 Hen-te-chin 痘德董, 51, 53, 58  
*beng chang* 橫帳 (horizontal tents)  
 Heng-shan 橫山, 161, 194  
 herding, herds, 9, 326–7, 328  
 hereditary chieftains: Mongols, 329  
 hereditary offices, 515, 516; abolished, 25–6; Chin (Jurchen), 271, 274–5  
 hereditary privilege (*yin-pu*), 491, 534, 571, 602; in Chin (Jurchen), bureaucracy, 271, 272; Hsia (Tangut), 203; Mongols, 628; Yüan, 631  
 hereditary selection (*shih-hsüan*), 78  
 hereditary status of military households, 651  
 hereditary succession, 75, 92  
 high court of justice, 564  
 historical records, 92–3, 201, Liao dynasty, 93, 459–60, 573  
 Historiographical Office (Liao), 93  
 historiography (Chinese), 3–4  
 History Office, 460  
*ho-cha* 合札, 276  
 Ho-chien prefecture 河間, 227  
 Ho-chou 河州 (Kansu, Lin-hsia), 359, 410, 411, 421  
 Ho-ch'ü 河曲, 158, 159  
 Ho-erh-ha-t'u, 502  
 Ho-hsi 河西, 156, 159, 162, 163; Branch Censorate at, 603; control of trade routes in, 169, 176; Hsia (Tangut), conquest, of, 121, 172–3, 175, 176, 178, 179–80, 186; Mongolian attack on, 207, 210, 211  
 Ho Jung-tsu, 497  
 Höjō Masamura 北條政村, 437  
 Ho-lan Mountains 賀蘭山, 123, 124  
 Ho-lo 河羅, 213  
 Ho-lu-wo, 135  
 Ho-nan, 61  
 Ho-nan (province) 河南, 543, 544; land tax, 523; natural calamities in, 551  
 Ho-nan Branch Secretariat, 543  
 Ho-ning lu 和寧路, 594  
 Ho Sheng 賀勝 (Bayan), 528, 538  
 Ho-shih-la 和世珠, 521  
 Ho-shih-lieh clan (Jurchens) 約石烈, 252, 286n39  
*Ho-tao t'i-chü-ssu* 河道提舉司, 599  
 Ho Wei 何瑋, 497  
 Hö'elün, 333, 334, 335  
 Honan 河南, 66, 281, 282, 299, 370, 543, 652  
 agriculture in, 292, 294  
 Chin (Jurchen) clans in, 285  
 Chin (Jurchen) control of, 233, 267  
 jurisdictions in, 574  
 Khubilai's reforms in, 408–9  
 land tenure in, 291  
 millenarian uprisings in, 571–2

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

804

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

- Mongol conquest of, 378  
 population, 621  
 state farm system in, 577  
 Sung in, 372  
 water transport, 297
- Hopei 河北, 4, 5, 9, 44, 49, 84, 99, 214, 360  
 autonomy of, 54, 55, 56  
 Chin (Jurchen) clans in, 285  
 Chin (Jurchen) control of, 227, 267  
 conscription in, 107  
 households registered in, 621 *tab*  
 Liao (Khitan) invasion of attacks on, 47, 48, 61, 64, 66–7, 70, 73–4, 80–1, 86  
 Mongolian attacks on, 252, 351, 358  
 monk-led rebellion in, 316  
 population, 37  
 water transport, 297
- Ho-tung, 55, 56, 57, 58, 61, 64, 70, 81, 99;  
 conscription in, 107
- honorary titles, 49, 338, 508, 547, 548
- horse trade, 122, 148, 159, 162, 165, 172, 299
- horses, 9, 11, 54, 58, 117–20, 162, 240  
 Chin (Jurchen), 217, 219, 259  
 forbidden to use for transportation, 297  
 guaranteed supply of, for Mongol wars, 453  
 Hsia (Tangut), 167, 168–9, 170, 261  
 importance of, 294  
 sources of, 179  
 state herds, 138  
 used in courier system, 297–8  
 uses of, for Mongols, 326–7, 330
- hostages, 8, 49, 144, 223, 229, 233; to Mongolian court, 361, 364, 407, 436
- Hou Chou 後周 dynasty (951–60)
- Hou Liang 後梁, *see* Later Liang
- Hou Shu 後蜀, *see* Later Shu
- Household Administration(s), for Ayushiridara, 579
- Household Service (*Chung-cheng yüan*), 504, 505
- Household Service (*Hui-cheng yüan*), of Targi, 524
- household tax, 378, 532
- households basis of collection of tribute, 378  
 in bondage, 661–4  
 classification system, Confucian, 635–8  
 classification system, retained in Ming dynasty, 656  
 hereditary, 661  
 organization of, 660–1  
 system of classification, 38  
 Yüan society, 613
- Hsi 奚 (people), 2, 5, 12, 44, 45, 48, 49, 52, 114, 131, 223, 244  
 agriculture, 94  
 assimilation of, by Khitan, 79, 91, 97–8  
 in Chin (Jurchen) military, 250, 276–7  
 and Chin (Jurchen) state/government, 268, 271–2, 274, 275  
 in Liao (Khitan) army, 142, 150  
 Liao (Khitan) attacks on, 53, 57, 58, 59  
 origins of, 46  
 in T'ang service, 49–50  
 uprisings among, 60  
*see also* Tanguts
- Hsi-an 西安, 543
- Hsi-ch'uan 西川, 163
- Hsi-ching 西京, 358
- Hsi-fan 西藩, 201
- Hsi-feng Pu-lai 細封步賴, 158
- Hsi Hsia (Hsia), state 西夏, 1, 7, 11, 13, 34, 154–214, 184–5 *map*, 240, 252, 279  
 attack on Chin, 259  
 and balance of power in East Asia, 203, 206  
 border markets with Chin (Jurchen), 298  
 border with Chin (Jurchen), 323  
 capital(s), 63, 64, 79, 94, 98, 116, 117, 126, 178, 194, 208, 365  
 Central Secretariat (Chung-shu ling), 200, 201

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

805

- Chin (Jurchen) diplomatic correspondence with, 282
- Chinggis's invasion of, 212 *map*
- coming of age, 197–205
- Confucian cult, 199–200
- conquered by Mongols, 210–14, 212 *map*, 622
- court, 193
- court, factions in, 206
- creators of, 214
- Department of State Affairs (*Shang-shu ling*), 200
- dynastic house, 155
- dynasty historical records, 201
- fall of, 214
- first Mongolian invasion of, 209 *map*
- growth of, 170, 171 *map*
- government, impact of Li-Yüan-hao on, 181
- and Han Chinese, 39
- historical legacy of, 214
- imperial period, 158
- incorporation of Ho-hsi, 121
- “inner” clans of, 169
- internal crisis, 193–4
- king of, 167, 176
- Kokonor ceded to, 180
- last years of, 205–14
- legal code, 29
- Li Ch'ien-shun invested as emperor of, 151
- Military Bureau, 201
- Mongol campaign against, 41, 206, 262, 349, 360, 364
- under Mongolian rule, 631
- political shape of, 182
- regnal titles, xxiv *tab*
- relation with Chin (Jurchen), 205, 210, 224, 226, 229, 239, 254, 261
- relations with China, 3, 191–2
- relations with Liao (Khitan), 91, 100, 120, 122, 123–4, 137–8, 140, 223
- relations with Sung, 20, 104, 148–9, 187–8, 192
- role of Uighurs, in, 180
- royal house, 199
- ruling house, 199
- ruling house, genealogy of, xxiii *fig*
- stability of, 196–7
- structure of, 183–6
- territorial conquest, 36
- T'o-pa Ssu-kung, duke of Hsia, 163
- trade with Chin (Jurchen), 299
- uprisings, banditry, 199
- wars, 37
- Hsi Hsia shu-shih* (Wu Kuang-ch'eng), 198–9
- Hsi-hsiang chi* 西廂記 (Tung Chieh-Yüan), 309
- Hsi-ho circuit 熙河路, 179–80
- Hsi-jung prefecture 西戎, 158
- Hsi-li Ch'ien-pu 昔里鈴部, 211, 387
- Hsi-liang 西涼, 365
- Hsi-liang fu 西涼府, 187
- Hsi Liao, *see* Khara Khitan
- Hsi-ling, 213, *see also* Liang-chou
- Hsi-ning 西寧, 154, 172, 173, 196
- Hsi-p'ing wang* 西平王, 167, 176
- Hsi-pi O-ta 西壁訛答, 207, 208
- Hsi-tsung 熙宗 (Chin emperor) (r. 1135–50), 232, 235, 266, 288n39; death of, 239; intellectual climate under, 306
- Hsi-yin, 82, 87, 89
- Hsi-yü 西域 Mongolian involvement in, 352–4
- Hsia prefecture 夏, 163
- Hsia-chou prefecture 夏州, 65, 159, 160–1, 162, 166, 168, 199; politics, 167; siege of, 164; T'ang control over, 164–5
- Hsia-chou Tanguts, 166
- Hsia-kuo kung* 夏國公, 163
- Hsiang-ch'ing Army Superintendency 駭慶, 201
- Hsiang-tsung 襄宗 (Wei-ming An-ch'üan) (r. 1206–11), 207, 216
- hsiang-wen* 詳穩, 13, 89

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

806

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

- Hsiang-yang 襄陽, 232, 421; battle of, 431–3
- hsiang-yin chiu-li* 鄉飲酒禮, 581
- Hsiao* 蕭, consort clan of Liao, 57, 61, 77, 78, 87, 92, 116, 169; junior patriarchal line (*shao fu chang*) of, 129
- Hsiao A-la* 蕭阿刺, 125
- Hsiao Baiju*, 525, 528, 538
- Hsiao Ch'i-ch'ing* 蕭敵慶, 590n7, 610n55
- Hsiao ching* 孝經 (Book of filial piety), 34, 155, 271, 317, 459, 519, 567, 580; translated into Mongolian, 610
- Hsiao Cho-pu* 蕭浞卜, 114
- Hsiao Feng-hsien* 蕭奉先, 140, 142, 146, 147
- Hsiao Han* 蕭翰, 75n21, 76
- Hsiao Han-chia-nu* 蕭韓家奴, 93, 117
- Hsiao Heng-te* 蕭恒德, 103, 104, 111
- Hsiao Ho-ta* 蕭合達, 199
- Hsiao Hsia-mo* 蕭霞抹, 133
- Hsiao Hsiao-hsien* 蕭孝先, 113, 114
- Hsiao Hsiao-mu* 蕭孝穆, 113, 114, 115, 116–17, 125, 133
- hsiao-hsueh* 小學, 199
- Hsiao Hsün* 蕭洵, 562
- Hsiao Hu-tu* 蕭胡都, 127, 128
- Hsiao Hui* 蕭惠, 122, 123
- Hsiao Kan* 蕭幹, 149, 150
- Hsiao Ko* 蕭革, 125, 128
- Hsiao-ku* 削古, 136n201
- Hsiao K'u* 蕭勗, 513
- Hsiao P'ai-ya* 蕭排押, 111, 112, 114n106, 129
- Hsiao Pi-ti* 蕭匹敵, 114
- Hsiao Ssu-hsien* 蕭思先, 142
- Hsiao Ssu-wen* 蕭思溫, 90
- Hsiao T'a-lin* 蕭撻凜, 105, 107
- Hsiao Te*, 116n116
- Hsiao Ti-lu* 蕭敵魯, 64
- Hsiao-tsung* 孝宗 (Sung emperor) (r. 1162–89), 205
- Hsiao Wu-na* 蕭兀納, 135
- Hsiao Yü-li-yeh* 蕭余里也, 136
- Hsiao-yün-shih* Hai-ya 小雲石海涯, 513
- Hsieh* (dowager empress), 434
- Hsien* (Chao Hsien; southern Sung emperor) (r. 1274–6; canonized as Kung-tsung), 434
- Hsieh-chou* 解州,
- hsien* 縣 (counties), 270 361, 565, 593, 595
- Hsien-chih* 鮮質, *see* Su-chih
- hsien-liang k'o* 賢良科,
- Hsien-pei* 鮮卑, 11, 31, 44–6, 156, 157, 181, 329–8
- Hsien-pei* T'u-yü-hun, 156–7
- Hsien-pi*, 9, 11
- hsien ssu-li* 縣司吏, 596
- Hsien-tsung* 獻宗 (Wei-ming Te-wang); Hsi-Hsia emperor (r. 1223–6), 210; death of, 213
- Hsien-tsung*, *see* Möngke (Mongolian Khagan) (r. 1251–59)
- hsien-yin* 縣尹, 595
- Hsien-yü* Shu, 469
- Hsin-fu chün* 新附軍, 601, 649
- Hsin T'ang-shu* (New history of the T'ang), 34
- Hsin-ting t'iao-chih* 新定條制, 116, 131
- Hsin-tu* 忻都, 482
- Hsin Wu-tai shih*, 60
- hsing* 行, 592, 599
- hsing* 姓 (clan), 285
- Hsing-an Range* 輿安, 147
- Hsing-ch'ing* 輝慶, 121
- Hsing-ch'ing fu* 輝慶府, 178
- Hsing-chou* 輝州, 176, 178, 194, 199, 200, 400, 415; Kubilai and, 408–9, 416
- Hsing-chung fu* 輝中府, 135, 144
- Hsing-chung-shu sheng* 行中書省, 592, 593
- Hsing-hsiu* 行秀, 315
- Hsing-kung-pu* 行工部, 592
- Hsing-Liao* dynasty 輝遼, 113
- Hsing-lung* prefecture, 126
- Hsing-pu* 刑部 (Ministry of Punishments), 589
- Hsing-shang-shu sheng* 行尚書省

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

807

- hsing-sheng* 行省 (administrative officers), 361–2, 373, 592, 593  
*Hsing-shu-mi-yüan* 行樞密院, 592  
*Hsing-t'ai* 行臺, 592  
*Hsing-t'ai chung-shu sheng*, *see* Branch Secretariats  
*Hsing-t'ai shang-shu sheng* 行臺尚書省, 267, 268, 592, 593  
*Hsing-Ta-ssu-nung-ssu* 行大司農司, 598  
*Hsing-tsung* 興宗 (Tsung-chen; Liao emperor) (r. 1031–55), 125; accession of, 177; foreign relations under, 120–3; reign of, 114–23, 124, 128, 129, 130  
*Hsing-Yü-shih-t'ai* 行御史臺, 603  
*Hsiung-chou* 雄州, 99, 105, 109  
*Hsiung-nu*, 9, 11, 18, 45, 321  
*Hsü-chou* 徐州, 577  
*Hsü Heng* 許衡, 459, 474, 497, 538, 587, death of, 474–5  
*Hsü-i* 眇胎 298,  
*Hsü-mai-chieh* 旭邁傑, 534; *see also* Kümeijil  
*Hsü Shih-ching* 許師敬, 538  
*Hsü Yu-jen* 許有壬, 554  
*Hsüan-cheng-yüan* 宣政院, 588, 606  
*Hsüan-fu shih* 宣撫使, 418, 597  
*Hsüan-hui yüan* 宣徽院, 524, 588, 601, 604  
*Hsüan-i* 宣懿, Empress: execution of, 133–5, 136, 139  
*Hsüan-i* Brigade (Wan-hu), 548  
*Hsüan-tsung* 宣宗, 49, 142, 252  
*Hsüan-tsung* (Wu-tu-pu; Chin emperor) (r. 1213–23), 252–4, 257, 258; and Mongol attacks, 259–61  
*hsüan-wei shih* 宣慰使, 461  
*Hsüan-wei ssu* 宣慰司 (Pacification commissions), 424, 594  
*Hu Chiao* 胡嶠, 75n21, 96  
*Hu Chih-yü* 胡祇遹, 597n25  
*Hu Chu* 胡肋, 562  
*Hu-ho-hao-t'e*, 151  
*Hu-kuang* (province) 湖廣, 544, 551  
*Hu-la* 胡刺, 51  
*Hu-lien* 胡顥, 91n43, 107n97  
*Hu Meng*, 99  
*Hu-pu* 戶部, (Ministry of Revenue), 589  
*Hu-sha-hu* 胡沙虎, 252  
*Hu-tu-lu Tu-erh-mi-shih* 忽都魯都兒迷失, *see* Khutulugh Törmish  
*Hua-hu* 化胡 (coconversion of the barbarians) theory, 420  
*Hua-hu ching* 化胡經 (Book on the conversion of the barbarians), 420  
*Huai* 懷, 542, 553  
*Huai*, prince of, 553  
*Huai border*, 244, 247  
*Huai-chou* 懷州, 505, 506, 513  
*Huai-nan*, 410  
*Huai-ning*, prince of, 505  
*Huai-yuan chen* 懷遠鎮, 178  
*Huai River* 淮河, 37, 233–4, 241, 248, 259, 298, 623, 658  
*Huai valley*: uprising in, 576–7  
*Huan Duke*, of Ch'i, 584  
*Huan-tsung* 桓宗 (Ch'un-yu; Hsi Hsia emperor) (r. 1193–1206), 205–6, 207; deposed, 207  
*Huang* 潛 River, 155, 173  
*Huang* River valley, 186, 195  
*Huang Ch'ao* 黃巢, 6 rebellion of, 5, 54, 55, 163  
*Huang Ch'ing-lien* 黃清連, 607n47, 613n60  
*Huang Chin* 黃潛, 562  
*Huang-ho River*, 104, 110  
*Huang-hui ssu* (Imperial Hospitals), 451  
*Huang-ling kang* 黃陵岡, 359  
*Huang-lung* (prefecture), 126  
*Huang-lung fu* 黃龍府, 142  
*Huang-shui*, river (Shira muren), 52  
*Huang T'ing-chien* 黃庭堅, 307  
*Huang-t'ai-ti* 皇太弟  
*huang-ti* 皇帝, 221, 232, 238  
*Huang-tu* 皇都, 63  
*Hui-cheng yüan* 徽政院, 524n149  
*Hui-chou* 會州, 172, 195  
*Hui-chou* 徽州, 435  
*Hui-fei*, Empress, 134–6

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

808

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

- Hui-ho 回紇, *see* Uighur
- Hui-hu 回鶻, *see* Uighur
- Hui-hui 回回 (Muslims), 563
- Hui-hui Directorate of Education 回回國子監 (Hui-hui kuo-tzu chien), 532
- Hui-hui (Inner and Central Asian) merchants, 377, 380–1
- Hui-hui ssu-t'ien chien* 回回司天監, 607
- Hui-hui t'ai shih 回回太師, 460
- Hui-ning 會寧, 245, 279, 300
- Hui-tsung 徽宗 (Sung emperor) (r. 1100–26), 229, 233, 234, 235, 307, 311, 553; death of, 232; empress of, 233, 234, 235
- Hui-tsung 惠宗 (Wei-ming Ping-ch'ang; Hsi Hsia emperor) (r. 1068–86), 192; reign of, 193–7
- Hui-t'ung 會通, 478
- Hui-yao* (Comprehensive essentials of institutions), 555, 556
- Hülegü, 206, 394, 395, 398, 412, 414, 422; in campaigns of conquest, 403, 404–5, 417, 421; and election of Khubilai, 423; Middle East campaigns, 433; princely jurisdiction, 407–8; and succession struggle, 454
- Hulun-nor, 139
- Hun-ch'u shan 渾垂山, 211
- Hun-te hou 昏德候, 232
- Hun-t'ung River 混同河, 140
- Hun-yüan (2) 混元, 318
- Hung Chin-fu 洪金富, 603n40
- Hung-ao 紅襢 (Red Coats), *see* Red Coats (Hung-ao)
- Hung Hao 洪皓, 180
- hunting, 64, 95, 217, 219, 294, 472; in Mongol economy, 327–8, 329
- hunting birds, 196, 217
- hunting camp(s) (*na-po*), 79–80
- hunting expeditions: Khitan emperors, 139, 140, 146
- hunting/falconry households, 604, 613
- Hupeh, 410
- Hupei, 388
- Hyünjong 顯宗 (Koryö king) (posthumous title Wang Sun), 111, 112
- I-chin border barrier 益津, 82, 84
- I-ching* 易經 (Book of changes), 258, 419, 458
- I-chou 易州 (prefecture), 149
- I-la 迭刺, 亦刺, 移刺 (I-lieh 迭烈) (tribe), 51, 52, 53, 56, 57, 59, 62
- I-li* (Book of ceremonials), 20
- I-li Hai-ya 益里海涯, 533
- I-li-pi 夷離畢, 126
- I-lieh-ssu-pa 亦列思八, 528
- i-shib po-chi-lieh* 乙室李極烈, 267
- I-te 蔡德 [皇后], 133
- i-ts'ang* 義倉, 599
- I-tsung 穀宗 (Hsi Hsia ruler) (r. 1048–67), 189, 190, 191, 192
- I-tu district 益都, 424
- i-tz'u wang* 一字王, 508
- I-yin (later I-hsing), 166
- ideology: of Ayurbardwada, 513; and government: Hsia, 203; Mongol, 347–8; in reign of Temür, 497–8; and restoration movement, 547; and Yüan factional conflict, 559
- Ikeuchi Hiroshi 池内宏, 594n19
- Iki, 442, 482, 484
- Ikires (clan), 533
- Il-khān Iran, 411, 413
- il-khāns* (subordinate khans), 408, 411, 412, 413, 464
- Ili River region, 389
- Ilig khaya, princess, 533
- Ilkha Senggüm, 206
- Ilkhānate (khanate), 550
- Ilkhanate of Persia, 454
- Im Yon, 437
- imperial academy, 469; second, 126
- Imperial Academy of Medicine (*T'ai-i-jian*), 451, 607
- imperial agencies/bureaus (Yüan), 604–8

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

809

- imperial ancestors posthumous designations, 219
- Imperial Ancestral Temple (*T'ai-miao*), *see* Imperial Shrine
- Imperial Bodyguards (Mongols), 452; *see also* *kesig*
- Imperial Capital (*Huang-tu*), 63
- imperial clan, 285; Liao (Khitan), 77, 116
- imperial clan (Chin/Jurchen), 284–5; artists in, 311; patronage of Buddhism, 313–14; slaveholding, 278, 287
- imperial clansmen (*tsung-ch'i*), 534; Yesün Temür's relations with, 539
- imperial decrees (*jarligh*) (Mongols), 387–8, 399
- Imperial Diarists' Office, 452
- imperial family (Mongols), 374; and business of empire, 563; divisions within, 385–6; and enthronement of Möngke, 392; privileges of, 491; and succession, 384
- imperial grants, 492, 500; under Ayurbarwada, 521–2; by Khaishan, 509; Tugh Temür, 550, 552; Yesün Temür, 539
- imperial great uncle (title), 125
- imperial great younger brother (*Huang t'ai ti*), 75
- imperial guard (*bo-cha mou-k'o*) (Chin), 276, 281
- imperial guards (*kesig*) (Mongols), *see* *kesig*
- imperial guards (*su-wei*), 590, 601
- imperial guards, 23, 533, 543; control of, by El Temür, 548; retrenchment of, 552
- imperial guards (*wei*), 502, 506
- Imperial Painting Collection, 468
- Imperial Palace (*K'ai-p'ing*), 419
- imperial power: personalized, 22–3, precariousness of, 24
- imperial princes (Mongols), 382, 386–7, 394, 491, 535
- annual, grants to, 534, 539
- and central government, 400
- claim to elect khaghan, 493–4
- and collegiality principle, 398
- and control of appanages, 608
- in coup, 533–4, 536
- dissidence among, 384–6, 388, 391, 412–13
- enemies of Bayan, 571
- plot against Möngke, 392–3
- power and privileges of, 520–2, 526, 558
- purged, 394
- resistance to reforms of Ayurbarwada, 524
- and war of restoration, 542, 544, 546, 547, 550
- and Yesün Temür, 538–9, 551
- and Yüan state, 559
- Imperial Shrine (*T'ai-miao*), 457–8, 539, 546, 549
- imperial status, Chin emperor, 221–2, 223, 225
- imperial surname, 8, 48
- “Imperial Younger Brother” (title), 115, 124
- imperialism, Yüan, 492
- imports/exports, Chin, 299
- Inal Toqhtō 亦納脫脫, 512
- indemnity principle, 289
- independent states/regimes, 3, 10, 24, 86, 120–1; brought under Sung control 85
- India, 36, 214, 418, 420, 429
- Indian Ocean, 72
- Indic-Tibetan culture, 156
- indirect rule, 8, 18
- Indonesia, 650
- inflation, 299, 449, 479, 501, 511, 512, 559, 585
- inheritance (Mongols), 367; of leadership, 52, 62, 340
- inheritance law, 28, 290
- Inner Academy (Nei-hsüeh), 200

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

810

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

- Inner Asia, 176, 490, 506; defense of, 502;  
 Mongol pacification of, 445
- Inner Mongolia, 44, 117, 150, 293
- Institute for the Glorification of Literature  
*(Chao-wen kuan)*, 531
- Institute of Astronomy (*Ssu-t'ien chien*), 607
- Institute of Muslim Astronomy (*Hui-hui ssu-t'ien chien*), 451, 607
- institutional identity: Yüan government, 563–4
- institutions: Chin, 265–77
- intellectual history, 304–5
- intellectuals, 21, 305: Chin, 305, 306, 315, 319, 320; Chinese, 307; *see also* literati elite; scholar-officials
- intermarriage, 40, 57, 154, 157, 281, 565, 569
- international order, 4–6, 53, 91, 102, 124
- international relations, 5; and stability in East Asia, 203; treaties in, 18–21
- interpreters, 31, 563
- interregnum, 567
- Invoke the East Branch Secretariat, 594
- investigating censors (*chien-ch'a yü shih*), 604
- investiture documents, 222, 234
- Iran, 36, 395; census, 387, 401; coinage, 402; İl-khāns of, 411, 413; Mongolian attack on, 404; Mongolian Branch Secretariat, 374, 383, 398
- Iraq, 394; census, 401; Mongolian attack on, 404
- Ireshiba, 528
- Irinjibal 懿璘質班 (Yüan emperor) (r. 1332; canonized as Ning-tsung), 247, 557, 567
- iron, iron weapons, 57, 220, 296, 523
- irrigation, 95, 293, 598, 599
- Irtysh region, 366
- Irtysh River, 323, 504
- Islam, 319, 481, 630; in China, 460; discrimination against, 532; favored by Yesün Temür, 540
- Isma'il, 433
- Ismailis (the Assassins), 404
- Issyk-kul, 153
- ius soli*, 27–8
- ius talionis* (eye for an eye) principle, 289
- Jabar Khoja, 373
- Jadaran (tribe), 339, 340, 342; lineage, 336
- “Jade Mirror Code of the Chen-kuan Reign, The,” 198
- Jakha Gambu, 206
- Jälayir tribe, 331, 396, 405
- Jāmal al-Dīn
- Jamugha, 336, 338–9  
 execution of, 342  
 and Temüjin, 337, 339–40, 342
- Jao-chou prefecture 饒州, 658
- Japan, 2, 3, 4, 5, 17, 66; invasions of, 37–8, 437–42, 449, 473, 474, 482–4, 483 *map*, 487, 501, 594, 650; peace mission to, 501
- jargbuchi* 札魯忽赤 (judges), 564, 591, 607; abolition of, 520–1
- jasagh* (legal code), *see* law code(s)
- Java, 17
- Jaya Indravarman VI, 485
- Jebe (Mongolian general), 352, 356, 357
- Jelme, 337
- Jen (Empress Dowager), 202
- Jen-huang wang, 69
- Jen-i (Empress) 仁懿, 125
- Jen Te-ching 任德敬, 198–9, 200, 201–2, 203–4
- Jen-to clan 仁多 (Tangut), 193, 194–5; stripped of power, 198
- Jen-to Ling-ting 仁多唆丁, 194
- Jen-to Pao-chung 仁多保忠, 195, 198
- Jen-tsung 仁宗, *see* Ayurbatwada khaghan (Emperor Jen-tsung) (r. 1311–20)
- Jen-tsung 仁宗 (Wei-ming Jen-hsiao; Hsia emperor) (r. 1140–93), 198; death of, 205; reign of, 199–205
- Jews, 319, 643
- jib-li* 日曆, 93

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

811

- Jib-pen hsing-chung-shu-sheng* 日本行中書省, 594
- Jochi, 340, 341, 356, 357, 368; line of, 392; sons of, 379, 383; and succession, 366
- Jochi Khasar, 334, 405
- Jochids, 384, 385, 387, 391, 395, 407; Güyüg's move against, 389; and succession crisis, 412; troops of, 393
- John of Plano Carpini (Giovanni di Piano Carpini), 462
- joint deliberation, 23–5
- Jou-jan, 45, 47
- ju* 儒, 627–8
- Ju-che 汝者, 218
- Ju-chen, *see* Jurchen 女真
- Ju-chih, *see* Jurchen 女直
- ju-hu* 儒戶, 613, 635
- judicial practice, 29, 344, 520–1, 591
- Jui-chih 睿智 [皇后] (Liao empress, later Empress Dowager Ch'eng-t'ien), 87
- jung kuan*, 564
- Jungaria, 341, 349, 366, 382, 389, 393
- junior patriarchal line (*shao fu chang*), 129
- Jurchen army, 13, 223
- Jurchen clans (*hsing*), 221, 268, 285–6; consolidation of, 219; independence of, 220; social stratification, 286
- Jurchen court, 151, 351, 352; Sung tribute payments to, 358–9
- Jurchen dynasty, 628
- Jurchen empire, 41
- Jurchen federation, 12, 218, 219
- Jurchen grandees, 235, 239, 243, 245, 252; attempt to make peace with Mongols, 261; attempts to curb power of, 275; in Chin government, 268; and land tenure, 292; winemaking, 296
- Jurchen imperial clan, 235
- Jurchen language, 20, 21, 216–17, 272, 281; in Chin administration, 282; in Korea, 283; translations into, 33–4, 35, 310
- Jurchen rulers: genealogy, xxv *fig*
- Jurchen script system (large/small), 31–2, 282–3, 643–4
- Jurchen state: dualism in, 267–8; Mongols' destruction of, 617; treaties, 18
- Jurchen tradition, and Chin government, 265
- Jurchen tribes, 113, 218
- Liao (Khitan) and, 91, 102, 103  
welded into nation, 141
- Jurchens, 12, 23, 39, 197, 201, 338, 612, 629  
artists, 311  
border problems with, 87, 206  
and Buddhism, 313–16  
captured by Khitan, 59  
in Chin government, 259, 270, 271–3  
“civilized” (*shu*)/“obedient”/“wild” (*sheng*) groups of, 11, 141, 219  
coins, 36  
collapse of rule of, 261  
conquest of north China, 42, 180, 215, 235, 283–4  
conquest of Shensi, 180  
control over China, 43  
cultural duality, 645, 646  
customary law, 28  
defecting to Mongols, 360–1  
and ethnic groups, 279–91  
and the frontier, 7, 10  
and Hai-ling wang rule, 243  
and Han Chinese, 39–40  
homeland of, 217  
independence of, 220, 221–2  
introduction of Confucianism, 200  
joint deliberation, 24  
lack of trained personnel, 230  
legal customs, 289–91  
Liao (Khitan) and, 57, 59, 138, 143, 198  
life-style/economy, 11, 12  
and literature, 310  
loyalty of, 143, 265

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

812

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

- Manchurian homelands of, 257–9, 279  
 methods of dominating Chinese, 215  
 in Mongolian administration, 362  
 in Mongolian army, 358, 431, 442, 601  
 and Mongolian conquest, 41, 213, 214,  
     363, 370–2  
 number of, 279  
 Önggünd vassals of, 323  
 political structure, 25, 265–70  
 predynastic history, 216–20  
 privileged position of, in Chin state,  
     279  
 relations with Mongols, 331–2  
 relations with Hsia (Tanguts), 155, 205,  
     207  
 scholarship, 306  
 sinicization of, 245  
 slavery, 38  
 social structure, 283–91  
 sociomilitary organization of, 273–7  
 and steppe tribes, 324, 349  
 tributary relations, 14–16  
 warfare, 140–9, 151, 208–10  
 and Yüan government, 587, 596  
*see also* Chin
- Jürkin, 338
- Jusen
- justice, administration of: Chin (Jurchen),  
     289–91; Liao (Khitan), 93, 94,  
     126–7  
 Yüan, 531, 560
- Juvaynī, 390
- Jüyin, 349
- Kaegyōng 開京, 111, 112
- Kaesong, 370
- K'ai-feng 開封, 16–17, 72, 73, 74, 75, 78,  
     80, 81, 82–3, 107, 109, 121, 122,  
     149, 188, 224, 232, 279, 298  
 agriculture, 292, 294  
 Chin (Jurchen) conquest of, 219, 227,  
     229, 302  
 Chin (Jurchen) imperial residence at,  
     240, 241, 352
- Chin (Jurchen) Southern Capital, 254  
 food availability, 297  
 intellectual climate, 305–6  
 Khitan occupation of, 88, 108  
 Mongol attack on, 263–4, 372  
 Northern Sung capital at, 657  
 site of shamanistic rituals, 457  
 social conditions in, 283  
 synagogue in, 319
- K'ai-p'ing 開平, 419, 421, 422, 423, 457;  
     Imperial Hospitals in, 451
- Kalka River, battle of, 357
- Kammala, 甘麻刺, 495–6, 535, 549
- Kan-chou 甘州, 7, 120, 121, 161, 162, 175,  
     464; Hsia (Tangut) capture of, 178,  
     179; Mongolian invasion, 211–13,  
     365
- Kan-chou Uighurs, 173, 176, 177
- Kan-ma-la 甘麻刺, 495
- Kan-su teng-ch'u hsing-chung-shu-sheng*, 594
- Kang Cho 康兆, 111
- Kang-lang-ling 剛浪陵, 187
- K'ang, prince of 康王 (Chao Kou; Sung  
     emperor) (r. 1127–62; canonized as,  
     Kao-tsung), 229
- K'ang Mo-chi 康默記, 88, 107
- k'ang-nieh* 糠孽, 316
- Kanghwa, 370
- Kansu 甘肅, 4, 36, 120–1, 138, 156, 293,  
     407, 424; Jurchen clans in, 285;  
     Mongol attacks on, 359
- Kansu corridor, 5, 65, 120, 154, 365
- Kansu Province, 2, 9, 13, 233
- Kao-ch'ang 高允權, 55, 173
- Kao-ch'ung-ch'üan, 167
- Kao Fang 高昉, 512, 528, 538
- Kao Feng 高鳳, 149
- Kao K'o-kung 高克恭, 469
- Kao-liang River 高梁河, 86
- Kao Mu-han 高模翰, 82
- Kao T'ai-hsiang 高泰祥, 417
- Kao-t'ang, prince of 高唐, 502
- Kao-tsung 高宗 (T'ang emperor)  
     (r. 649–83), 48

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

813

- Kao-tsung (Sung emperor) (r. 1127), 229, 234–5, 241
- Kao Wen-te 高文德, 614n61
- Kao-yu 高郵, 577–8, 583
- Kao Yung-ch'ang 高永昌, 144
- Karabalgasun, 5
- Kashgar, 179
- Kashmir, 404
- Kebek, 539
- Ked Bukha, 404–5, 407
- ken chiao* 根腳 (“roots and feet”), 564
- Kereyid (tribe), 155, 251, 323, 324, 337, 338, 569; in attack on Naiman, 339; and Hsia (Tangut), 206–7; and Mongols, 346, 611; and Temüjin, 335–8, 340, 341
- Kertanagara (king of Java), 487
- Kerülen basin, 337, 339
- Kerulen River, 324, 341
- kesig* 忳薛 (hereditary imperial body guards), 23, 272, 345, 361, 389, 397, 508, 564, 568, 570, 572, 601, 604
- education of, 554
- as institution, 343–4
- Khubilai employed, 452, 453
- nököd* became nucleus of, 608
- prestige of service in, 571
- kesigden* 忳薛丹, 564, 568, 570
- Khabul Khan, 15, 238, 251, 332, 333, 336, 338
- founder of first Mongolian state, 331
- Khadakh, 386, 393–4, 396
- Khadakhach, 393
- khaghan* 可罕 (title), 331 assumed by Ögödei, 367, 368; rival claimants to, 24
- khaghan of all Mongols; Temür as, 503; Yesün Temür, 538–9; *see also* Khubilai (Yüan emperor) (r. 1260–94)
- khaghanate, 61–2, 367, 422
- succession to, 421–2
- khaghan(s), 58, 332
- A-pao-chi, 60–8
- challenges faced by, 492
- documents about, 555–6
- election of, 493–4
- Liao (Khitan), 52, 53
- mid-Yüan period, 490, 558
- and powerful ministers, 548–9
- Uighur, 5
- Khaidu 海都 (ancestor of Chinggis), 331–2
- Khaidu 海都 (grandson of Ögödei), 24, 394–5, 412, 442–5, 454, 488, 542; death of, 503; de facto ruler of Central Asia, 444–5; defeated, 502–3; Mongols' war with, 501–2, 506; rebels against Khubilai, 442–5
- Khaishan 海山 (Yüan emperor) (r. 1307–11; canonized as Wu-tsung), 502, 503–4, 505–12, 568, 569
- death of, 512
- enthronement of, 507
- extravagant spending by, 509
- “new deals” of, 510–12, 552
- reign of, 518, 521, 546, 549, 559, 560
- restoration of imperial line of, 541–5, 547, 549
- sons of, 538–9
- sons of, and restoration, 545–7
- succession, 505–7, 513, 514, 527
- Khalakhaljid sands, 341
- Khalkha River, 340, 341
- Kharma 哈麻, 578
- khan* 罕 (title): sons of Chinggis khan, 367; Temüjin assumed, 336–7
- khanates (Mongolian empire), 413, 425
- map*, 643; and election of Khubilai, 423; peace among, 503; regional, 394; and restoration, 550–1
- Khangai Range, 339
- khans, 332, 374; *nököd* of, 326
- Khara Hülegü, 395
- Khara Khada, 502

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

814

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

- Khara-Khitai** (Western Liao; Central Asian state 1131–1213), 151–3, 152  
*map*, 155, 180, 206, 238, 321, 337, 354, 356, 373, 629; destruction of by Mongols, 354–6; revived under Güchülgü, 354; Uighurs and, 349, 350, 630
- Khara Khorum**, 381, 394, 395, 411, 423, 608, 647  
 Arigh Böke base in 424  
 capital moved from, 454  
 capital of Mongolian state, 347–8  
 paper money, 402  
 rebellious troops attack on, 445
- Khara-khoto**, 35, 365
- Khara-khoto style**, 154
- Kharakhanid**, 179
- Khazars**, 321
- Khentei Range**, 330
- Khitan** 契丹 (term), 12  
**Khitan** 契丹 (Ch'i-tan) clans, 286
- Khitan court**, 64
- Khitan culture**, 67–8
- Khitan elite**: conflicting elements in, 67–8
- Khitan empire**, 41, 165
- Khitan federation**, 12
- Khitan imperial clan**, 226
- Khitan language**, 12, 20, 21, 45–6, 67, 104; government documents in, 167; translations into, 33, 34, 35, 93
- Khitan nobility**, 130–1
- Khitan script** (large/small), 31, 67, 283–4, 643–4
- Khitan state**, 2, 3, 25, 43–4  
 and agriculture, 94–5  
 Chinese population foundation of, 59  
 internal changes, 91–8  
 overthrown by Chin, 215  
 treaties, 18  
*see also* Liao
- Khitan tribes**, 52, 53; Chinese-style surnames for, 132; confederation of, 46–7
- Khitans**, 1, 4, 5–6, 10, 164, 181, 217, 223, 224  
 A-pao-chi ascent to throne, 60–8  
 in Chin (Jurchen) military, 250 276–7, 281  
 in Chin (Jurchen) state, 226, 254, 257–8, 268, 270, 271–2, 274, 275, 279, 282, 286, 306  
 and China, 13, 39, 53–6, 55 *fig*, 64–75, 80–7, 132  
 coins, 35–6  
 cultural duality, 267, 645, 646  
 debarred from examinations, 92  
 domination of Chinese, 38  
 economy of, 11  
 emergence of, as major power, 53–60, 67  
 and the frontier, 7, 9  
 and Hai-ling wang's rule, 243  
 in Hsia (Tangut) empire, 154, 188–9  
 hunting, 294  
 joint deliberation, 24  
 law applied to, 28  
 Li K'o-yung alliance with, 58, 164  
 in Mongolian administration, 360–1, 362  
 in Mongolian army, 358, 601  
 Mongols and, 214, 329  
 and north China, 6, 65–7, 65 *fig* 83 *fig*  
 and northern Han, 167  
 origins, of, 45–6  
 predynastic, 44–53  
 in/and rebellions, 112–14, 195, 199, 241, 243, 244, 293, 352  
 relations with Jurchens, 210, 220  
 relations with Sung, 83–7, 188  
 relations with Tangut, 155, 158, 165, 166, 168, 176–7, 180, 193, 198  
 sinicization of, 245  
 succession crisis and reign of T'ai-tsung, 68–75  
 in T'ang service, 5, 49–50  
 tributary relations, 14, 15–16  
 Uighurs and, 177

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

815

- war with Koryō, 111–12  
 wars with Sung, 99–100, 104–8, 106 *fig*  
 and Yüan government, 587  
*see also* Liao  
 Khoja, 391, 392, 393  
 Khori Tumad (tribe), 328  
 Khorilar lineage (Mongols), 330  
 Khoshila 和世㻋(刺) (Yüan emperor)  
     (r. 1329; canonized Ming-tsung),  
     514, 521, 527, 539, 542, 543, 551,  
     557, 566–7  
     death of 545–6, 550, 557  
     failure to capture throne, 546–7  
     purge of followers of, 549  
     and restoration effort, 545  
 Khotan, 121, 155, 162, 179, 205  
 Khotanese, 156  
 Kubilai 忽必烈 (Yüan emperor; Sechen  
     khaghan) (r. 1260–94; canonized as  
     Shih-tsu), 1, 17, 23, 26, 37, 41, 206,  
     257, 312–13, 394, 398, 566, 613, 617  
     abdication of responsibility by, 475  
     achievements of, 488–9  
     adopted Chinese reign title (Chung-  
         t'ung), 423  
     adopted dynastic name Yüan, 291  
     versus Arigh Böke, 422–9  
     and attack on Sung, 410  
     and Central Asia, 442–5  
     challenges to legitimacy of, 424–6, 429,  
         442–3, 445, 454, 484, 487–8, 491,  
         501–2  
     and China, 418–22  
     Chinese advisers to, 415–17, 418–19,  
         420, 423, 426, 427, 446, 457, 458,  
         460, 474–5, 587  
     and Chinese culture, 465–71  
     claim to universal rule, 466, 471, 624  
     and conquest/rule of China, 623  
         cultural development under, 642  
         death of, 488, 490  
         and death of Möngke, 411  
         declared Great Yüan dynasty, 616  
         early years of, 414–18  
     economic problems in reign of, 473–8  
     economic and religious abuses in reign  
         of, 478–82  
     effort to restore era of, 568–72  
     elected great khan, 423  
     as emperor of China, 454–7  
     foreign expansion, 429–45, 482–88,  
         501, 650  
     health problems, 473, 475, 488  
     household organization, 660–1  
     imperial grants, 500  
     and invasion of Japan, 37–8, 437–42  
     and invasion of southern China,  
         405–7  
     as khaghan of Mongols, 454, 471, 487,  
         491, 501–2  
     lack of control in policies of, 482, 484,  
         487–8  
     last years of, 488–9  
     legacy of, 490–2, 507, 508, 557–8  
     military in reign of, 651–2  
     and north China, 407–9, 636  
     portrait commissioned by, 468  
     and preservation of Mongolian  
         heritage 471–3  
     princely jurisdiction, 407–9  
     reign, 414–89, 510, 511, 512, 514, 515,  
         516, 520, 521, 522, 523, 529–30,  
         532, 569, 589, 593, 618, 621, 622–3,  
         626, 631, 651–2  
     reign titles, 479, 568  
     relations with Möngke, 408–9, 417  
     relations with Sung, 431–6  
     and religion, 457–65, 473  
     social and economic policies of,  
         445–54  
     stature of, 414, 418  
     and structure of governance, 587, 588,  
         589, 597–9, 601, 604, 605  
     and subjugation of Korea, 436–7  
     and succession, 412–13, 492–4, 513  
     suppression of uprisings by, 551  
     systematization of Yüan rule under,  
         633–4

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

816

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

- Temür as conservator of the achievements of, 496–8
- Turks in reign of, 611
- and Western Christians, 462–5
- Khum Sengir, 389
- Khurásán, 354, 357, 368, 404
- khuriltai*, 24, 325, 336, 382, 391, 392, 396, 423, 503, 507, 568  
in election of khaghans, 493–4  
of 1206, 342–3, 348  
of 1229, 365–8  
of 1241 and 1246, 385  
of 1251, 399, 403–4  
of 1294, 495–6
- Khutula, 332–4
- Khutulugh Törmish, 540, 554
- Khwârazm (state), 354–6, 357, 364, 365
- Khwârazmshâh, last, 362–3, 370
- Kiangsi 江西, 85, 571–2, 658
- Kiangsu 江蘇, 85, 285, 655, 658, 659
- Kiev, 617
- Kilgo River, 336
- king (*wang*) (title), 223
- kinship groupings, in hunting: Mongolian tribes, 327
- kinship relations, fictitious, 109
- kinship traditions: Mongols, 331, 333; T'ang, 8; Tangut, 191; Tibetan, 191
- Kirgiz, 53, 324, 348, 356
- Kirin province, 10, 44, 141
- Kírman, 394
- Kiyad *yasun*, 333, 336
- Ko-erh han 葛兒罕,
- Ko-la 葛刺,
- k'o-ch'ai* 科差
- K'o Chiu-ssu 柯九思, 529, 544, 555
- K'o-i men 克夷門, 207–8
- K'o-t'u-yü 可突于, 49, 51, 52
- K'o-tun (Chen prefecture) 可敦, 151
- K'o-tun (city), 91n43
- Köchü, 384
- Köde'e Aral, 367, 392
- Koguryó 高句麗, 2, 3, 4, 47, 102, 103
- Kökö Debter, *see* “Blue Register”
- Kököchu (prince), 502
- Kököjin, 494, 495, 504
- Kokonor, lake (Kökö Naur), 155–7, 179–80, 186, 195–6, 336; instability in, 195
- Kokonor Tibetans, 177
- Köncheg-beg, 551
- Korea (Koryô), 2, 4, 37, 43, 47, 66, 72, 91, 97, 99, 114, 141, 258, 594  
breakup of Silla kingdom, 5  
and Chin (Jurchen), 219, 221, 226, 239, 282, 283, 298, 299  
crown prince of, 123  
king of, declared himself vassal of Chin, 229
- Liao (Khitan) campaigns against, 101  
*fig*, 102, 111–12, 113
- Mongol campaign against, 370, 371  
*map*, 400, 403–4, 405, 411
- Mongol control over, 436–7, 473
- pasturelands, 453
- relations with Liao (Khitan), 98, 99, 100–4, 120, 124, 137–8, 140, 144, 223
- T'ang attempt to conquer, 48
- Toghon Temür exiled to, 557
- Yüan relations with, 580
- Korean royal family, 437
- Koreans, 110, 570, 580, 631; in Han armies, 601; in Mongolian military, 403, 431, 442
- Körgüz, 383, 502
- Koryô, *see* Korea
- Koryô court, 113; coup, 111
- Koryô dynasty, 100
- Kötén, 383
- Kou 槩 (personal name of Sung Kao-tsung), 234, 244
- K'ou Chun 寇準, 108
- Ku-na-ta-la 古納答刺 (Gunadara), 557; *see also* El Tegüs
- Ku-ssu-lo 唸嘶羅, 173–6, 186, 192
- K'u-k'o 窟可, *see* K'u-ko
- K'u-ko 窟哥, 47, 48

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

817

- K'u-mo-hsi 庫莫奚, 44, 45,  
 Kua-chou 瓜州, 162, 177, 365  
*kuan* 貢 (string of cash), 287, 295, 296,  
 298, 300–4  
 Kuan-chung 關中  
*kuan-hu* 官戶, 287  
*Kuan Mi-le p'u-sa shang sheng Tou-shuai t'ien ching* 觀彌勒菩薩上生兜率天經 (*Sutra on the visualization of the Maitreya Bodhisattva's ascent and rebirth in Tushita Heaven*), 205  
 Kuan-nan 關南 (“South of the Barriers”),  
 104, 107, 108, 122, 188  
 K'uan-ch'e Po 寬徹伯, 551  
 K'uan-ch'e Pu-hua 寬徹不花  
 Kuang-chou 廣州, 435  
*Kuang-hui ssu* 廣惠司  
*Kuang-i*, *see* *T'ai-tsung* (Liao emperor) (r. 927)  
 Kucha, 155  
*Kuei-i ch'üan* 歸義軍, 162  
 Kuei-lin, 567  
 Kuei-te 歸德, 264  
 Kuei-te 貴德,  
*K'uei-chang ko* 奎章閣, 610  
*K'uei-chang ko hsüeh-shih yüan* 奎章閣學士院,  
 548, 554  
 Kuju 龜州, 112  
 Külüd Bukka, 533  
 Kümeijil 旭邁傑, 534, 537  
*kumis*  
 Kun Dgah blog ros pa, 541  
*kung* 工, 18, 653  
*kung* 貢 (tribute), 234  
*Kung-bsiang fu* 宮相府, 548  
 Kung K'ai 囊開, 469  
*Kung-pu* 工部, 589  
*kuo-lun* 國論, 266  
*kuo-shih* 國師, 461  
*Kuo-shih yüan* 國史院, 665  
 Kuo Shou-ching 郭守敬, 451  
*kuo-tzu* 國字, 466  
*Kuo-tzu chien* 國子監, 126, 606  
*Kuo-tzu hsüeh* 國子學, 497  
*kuo-wang* 國王 (prince of the realm) (title),  
 199, 357  
 Kuo Wei 鄭威, 81, 82  
 Kuo Yao-shih 鄭藥師, 149–50, 227  
 K'uo-chou 廻州, 173  
 K'uo-k'uo-ch'u 闔闔出, 502  
 K'uo-li-chi-ssu 闔里吉思, 502  
 Kwangjong, Korean king 光宗, 103  
 Kwangsi, 85  
 Kwangtung, 85, 571–2  
 Kychanov, Eugenii Ivanovich, 183  
 Kyūshū, 442, 484  
 La-ko 刺葛, 59, 62  
 labor, 38, 132, 296, 658  
 labor services: required by Khitan, 95,  
 113; *see also* corvée obligations/  
 service  
 Lai-chou 來州, 135  
 Lake Baikal, 324  
 Lake Kokonor, 154  
 Lan-chou 蘭州, 154, 172, 186, 193, 194;  
 border markets at, 205; rebellion in,  
 208–9  
*Lan-i-chien* 閩遺監, 605, 613  
 land allocation policy, 292  
 land distribution, 94–5, 276  
 land ownership: Chin state, 291–2;  
 Mongolian tribes, 327  
 land surveys, 96  
 land tax, 292, 303, 304, 475, 523, 566, 575  
 landholding: Chin state, 284; by religious  
 communities, 313  
 landholding elite; Mongols and, 452,  
 612–13  
 landlords, 430, 663  
 languages  
 in Chin government, 282–3  
 Chinese, 465  
 colloquial, 467, 468  
 in federations, 12  
 of treaties, 20–1  
 in Yüan China, 644  
 in Yüan government, 563

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

- see also* multilingualism; written language(s); *and individual languages*
- Lao-ho River, 52
- Lao tzu 老子, 155, 420, 481
- Late T'ang, balance of power, 3–7
- Later Chou, *see* Hou Chou 後周
- Later Chou court, 167
- Later Han dynasty, 309
- Later Koguryō, 100
- Later Liang 後梁, 164
- Later Paekche, 100
- Later Shu 後蜀, 85
- Later T'ang, 6, 56, 61, 62, 64, 65, 70, 72, 165, 168; court coup, 66–7; founder of, 164; regime instability, 69–70
- Later T'ang court, 165, 218
- Later Wei, 157–8
- law
- Chin state, 389–91
  - Chinese-style, 126–7
  - family, 28, 290
  - inheritance, 28, 290
  - Liao (Khitan), 131
  - Mongol, 379
  - punishment under, 94
  - regarding four-class system, 631, 634–5, 648
  - traditional/statutory, 27–8
- law code(s) (legal code) (*jasagh*), 289–91, 306, 453
- under Ayurbarwada, 518–19
  - Chin, 249
  - Chinese, 93–4, 453–4, 518
  - customary law, 131
  - Khubilai's concern with, 453–4
  - lack of, 445
  - Liao (Khitan), 93–4, 116, 131, 137
  - Mongols, 344
  - reform of, 137
  - Tangut, 180, 199–200, 203–4
  - Yüan, 560
- Le-tu 樂都, 173, 175, 194–6
- leaders (*khangs*), Naiman, 323
- leaders, leadership
- clan-dominated, 239
  - hereditary (Khitan), 52, 62
  - Liao (Khitan), 52, 53, 60
  - Mongolian tribes, 325, 329, 336, 340
  - predynastic Khitan, 47–8, 49
- left prime minister (*tso ch'eng-hsiang*), 268
- legal control, centralized, 116
- legal professionalism, 597
- legal pronouncements (*jasagh*), Chinggis khan, 344, 346
- legal system: fragmented, 27–9; Khitan, 137
- legitimacy: of Khubilai as khagan, 424–6, 429, 442–3, 445, 454, 484, 487–8, 491, 501–2; of Mongol rule, 347, 625; of rule of Tugh Temür, 550–5, 556–7; of Yesün Temür, 536–7, 538–9; of Yüan government, 573, 581
- Lei-chou peninsula 雷州, 435
- Lesser Khingan Range, 329
- levies: on north China, 409
- levies (Liao/Khitan), 73, 74, 95, 96, 113; labor, 38, 132; manpower, military service, 117–20; *see also* corvée obligations/service
- levirate, 288
- Li 李 (surname), 14, 158, 163, 181
- li 里 (Chinese mile), 63, 166, 168, 172, 193, 297
- Li Ch'ien 李謙, 515
- Li Ch'ien-heng 李謙亨, 538
- Li Ch'ien-shun 李乾順, 150, 151
- Li Ch'ing 李清, 193
- Li Ch'u-wen 李處溫, 149
- Li Ch'üan 李全, 256, 257, 259
- Li Ch'üan-i, 431
- Li-chi (Book of rites), 20
- Li Chi-ch'ien 李繼遷, 104, 105, 168–70, 172, 175, 176, 181
- Li Chi-p'eng 李繼捧, 168, 172
- Li Chieh-lo 李偕落, 51
- Li Chih-ch'un 李之純, 315

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

819

- Li Chin-chung 李盡忠, 48  
 Li (Ta-ho) clan, 47, 48, 49, 52  
 Li (T'o-pa) clan, 165, 167, 168; rebellion, 166–7  
 Li Fang, 99  
 Li Hao-wen 李好文, 579  
 Li Ho-ta 李合達, *see* Hsiao Ho-ta  
 Li Hsien 李憲, 193–4  
 Li-hu, 69, 75–6, 82, 87  
 Li I-ch'ang 李彝昌, 164  
 Li I-ch'ao 李彝超, 164–5, 166  
 Li I-hsing 李彝興, 166  
 Li I-min 李彝敏, 166  
 Li I-yin 李彝殷, 166, 167; *see also* Li I-hsing  
 Li Jen-fu 李仁福, 164, 167  
 Li Jen-yü 李仁裕, 166  
 Li K'an 李衍, 469  
 Li K'o-jui 李克叡; 167, 168; *see also* Li Kuang-jui  
 Li K'o-yung 李克用, 6, 55–8, 61, 163, 164  
 Li Kuang-jui 李光叡, 167, 168  
 Li Kuo-ch'ang 李國昌, *see* Chu-yeh Ch'ih-hsin  
 Li Kuo-che 李過折, 51, 52  
 Li-li-tsun 李立遵, 173–5  
 Li Mao-chen 李茂貞, 164  
 Li Meng 李孟, 507, 513, 514–15, 525, 528  
 Li Pang-ning 李邦寧, 514  
 Li Pi, 247  
 Li Ssu-yüan 李嗣源 (Later T'ang emperor, Ming-tsung), 64, 66, 69–70  
 Li T'an 李壇, 257, 424–6  
 Li T'ao 李燾, 175  
 Li Te-ming 李德明, 176–9, 180, 182, 196  
 Li Ts'un-hsü 李存勗 (Chang-tsung; Later T'ang Emperor) (r. 923–6) 61, 62, 64–5, 164  
 Li Ts'ung-hou 李從厚 (Later T'ang emperor) (r. 933–4; canonized Min-ti), 70  
 Li Ts'ung-k'o 李從珂 (Fei-ti; Later T'ang Emperor) (r. 934–7), 70  
 Li Tse-fen 李則芬, 604–41  
 Li Yüan-hao 李元昊 (Wei-ming Yang-hsiao; Hsi-Hsia emperor) (r. 1032–48; canonized as Ching-tsung), 85, 86, 88, 90, 121, 122–3, 176, 177, 178–9  
 death of, 87, 189  
 elevated to emperor, 89, 186–7  
 reign of, 84–7, 92, 93, 95, 97, 180–9  
 succession to, 189–91  
 Li-chou 利州, 405, 410  
*Li-pu* 吏部 (Ministry of Personnel), 589  
*Li-pu* 禮部 (Ministry of Rites), 589  
*liang* 兩, 189, 541  
 Liang, 6, 16, 60, 164; conquered, 64, 65; prince of, 150, 541  
 Liang (Hsi Hsia Empress Dowager) (regent over Hui-tsung, 1067–85), 191–4  
 Liang (Hsi Hsia Empress Dowager) (regent over Ch'ung-tsung, 1086–99), 194–5  
 Liang, Prince of 梁王, 136–201, 150  
 Liang Ch'i-pu 梁乞逋, 194, 195  
 Liang-chou 涼州, 7, 120, 162, 172, 173, 175, 183, 187; and Tangut expansion, 172–3, 176, 179, 180  
 Liang Clan (Tangut), 191, 195, 196, 199  
 Liang dynasty, 61, 62–3  
 Liang I-mai 梁乙埋, 191, 193, 194  
 Liang Te-kuei 李德珪, 497, 499  
 Liang-tso, 189, 190  
 Liao court, 195, 218  
 and Chin dynasty, 221, 222–3  
 collegial atmosphere, 126  
 internal dissension, 125–6, 130, 146–7, 194  
 leadership changes in, 105  
 patronage of Buddhism, 312, 313, 314  
 power at, 128–9  
 and Tanguts, 169, 176–7, 197  
 Liao dynastic period, 48, 52  
 Liao 遼 dynasty, 1, 2, 3, 10, 12, 14, 16, 35, 37, 43–153, 167, 176, 180, 182, 267, 273, 287, 295, 331, 427, 598, 604, 645

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

820

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

- A-pao-chi becomes khaghan and  
ascends throne, 56–68
- army, 13
- background of A-pao-chi's rise to  
power, 53–6
- beginning of, 60
- as Buddhist center, 196
- campaigns against Koryō, 101f, 102
- capitals, 225, 226, 455
- cattle breeding, 293
- changes in internal government, 91
- collapse of, 139–49
- compiling standard history of, 605,  
665–8
- conquered peoples incorporated into  
government of, 79
- currency, 300
- development of government  
institutions, 76–80
- diplomacy, 19, 20, 188
- dual system of administration, 25
- emperors, 56, 66
- fall of, 145 *fig*, 155
- fiscal policy, 302
- foreign relations, 98–114
- founding of, 43–4, 52, 137
- genealogy, xxi
- historical records of, 459–60, 573
- household of emperor, 22–3
- instability among, 76
- invasions of Korea, 37
- Jurchens subjects of, 219–20
- legal system, 28, 289
- marriage customs, 87, 286
- military structure, 276, 277
- overthrown by Chin, 215
- and power stability, East Asia, 203
- predynastic Khitan, 44–53
- prince of, 541
- recruitment of officials, 271
- regency of Empress Dowager Ch'eng-  
t'ien, 87–91
- reign of Ching-tsung, 84–7
- reign of Hsing-tsung, 114–23
- reign of Mu-tsung, 81–4
- reign of Sheng-tsung, 91
- reign of Tao-tsung, 123–39
- reign of T'ien-tso, 139–49
- relations with Chin (Jurchen), 224
- relations with Hsia (Tangut), 164, 181,  
192, 198
- relations with Korea, 100–4
- relations with regimes in China, 80–1
- relations with Sung, 86–7
- spread of dominion of, 61
- succession, 24, 68–76
- territorial conquest, 36
- treaty with Sung, 20, 177
- war with Chin, 166, 221
- works translated under, 310  
and Yüan bureaucracy, 587
- Liao emperors: moving with hunting  
season, 79–80; and regnal titles, xxii  
*tab*
- Liao empire, 118–19 *fig*, 241  
at end of Tao-tsung reign, 139
- final disaster, 149–53
- lineage groups, 62
- Northern/Southern divisions, 64
- overthrow of, 223, 352
- split, 148
- structure of, 218
- tribal borderlands, 138
- Liaoning province, 5, 10, 44, 102
- Liao River (Shira Muren), 44–5, 144,  
221
- Liao River valley, 141, 357
- Liao shih* 遼史, 45, 51, 60, 76, 82, 91, 121,  
125, 129, 151
- Liao state/government, 7, 11, 238, 281  
collapse of, 227
- duality, 182
- emergence of, 5–6
- fatal defects, 225–6
- and Han Chinese, 39
- Han Te-jung control over, 90
- influence on Chin government, 265,  
269, 270

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

821

- Jurchen control of, 14, 267, 274, 313,  
629  
treaties, 18
- Liao-tung, 257
- Liao-tung circuit, 222
- Liao-yang 遼陽 (“Eastern Capital” of Liao), 69, 79, 102, 223; coup in, 243
- Liao-yang 遼陽 (province), 544
- Lieh nü chuan* 列女傳 (Biographies of women) (Liu Hsiang), 519
- Lin-ch’ing 臨清, 478
- Lin-chou 麟州, 167, 170, 205
- Lin-huang 臨潢, 63, 232
- Lin-pu-ch’ih 蘭逋叱, 193
- Lin-t’ao 臨洮, 213
- Lin-t’ao circuit, 208
- Lin-t’ao hsien 臨洮縣, 186
- lineage, 506
- lineage chiefs, *nököd* of, 326
- lineages (*obogh*) (Mongolian tribes) 321, 324–5, 326; enmity between, 332; founder of, 342; functions of, 327; mythical ancestors, 330–1; origination of, 330, 331; unification of, 336
- Ling-chou 瞞州, 7, 65, 159, 160, 161, 162, 165, 170, 177, 194, 199, 201, 365; capital of Hsia state, 170–2; Mongolian conquest of, 213
- ling-lei* 令類 (miscellaneous ordinances), 518
- Ling-pei 嶺北 (province), 544; Branch Secretariat, 507, 546
- liquor production, ban on, 511
- literacy, 67, 468
- literary fashions, Chin state, 307
- literary history: Chin period in, 305
- literary men’s painting (*wen-jen hua*), 469
- literati elite, 92; in art and literature, 642–3
- literature: Chin state, 304–13, 318; literati elite and, 642–3; patronage of, by Tugh Temür, 553–6; Yüan China, 644
- literatus status, 639
- litigation, and agriculture, 95
- Little Ju-che people, 218
- liu* 潤(流), 183
- Liu Chi 劉基, 582–4
- Liu Chih-yüan 劉知遠, 74, 74–5, 309
- Liu Ch’ung 劉崇, 74, 75
- liu-hou* 留後, 79
- Liu Hsiang 劉向, 519
- Liu Huang-hou* 六皇后 (sixth dowager-empress), *see* Töregene
- Liu Jen-kung 劉仁恭, 56, 58, 61, 97
- Liu ku 六谷, 172–3
- Liu Kuan-tao 劉貫道, 468
- Liu min* 流民, 663
- Liu Min-chung 劉敏中, 515
- Liu-p’an Mountains 六盤山, 213, 410, 421
- Liu Ping-chung 劉秉忠, 415, 418, 454, 458, 587
- liu pu* 六部, Six Ministries, 589
- liu-shou* 留守, 528, 593
- Liu Shou-kuang 劉守光, 61
- Liu Yü 劉豫, 230–2
- livestock, 9, 159, 161, 165, 196
- Lo 羅, (Hsi Hsia empress, Later Grand Empress Dowager), 204, 205, 207
- Lo-shou, 105
- Lo-yang 洛陽, 66, 69, 74, 79, 165, 270
- local defense militias, 576–7
- local elites, in Mongolian administration, 373–4
- local government, 588; Chin, 270; Mongol administration, 398; Yüan, 574, 591–2, 596, 603, 660–1
- local officials, 387, 565, 583, 589, 598; authority of, 574, 578
- local regimes, foreign leaders of, 6–7
- local uprisings, 41–2
- locust infestations, 132, 247, 565
- Lolo (tribe), 407
- Lotus sutra, 314, 316
- Lou-kuo, 82

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

822

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

- loyalists, 544–5, 550; costs of campaign against, 552; killed, exiled, 549
- loyalty (virtue), 265, 268–9, 602, 625
- Loyang, 16
- lu* 路, 270, 427, 593, 594
- Lu Ch'un 陸淳, 519
- Lu Chen 路振, 98
- Lü-chen 慮真, 216
- Lu Hsiu-fu 陸秀夫, 435
- Lu-hung, 67
- Lu-lung 嘉隆 Province, 50, 56, 58, 61, 64, 67, 97
- Lu Ming-hui 盧明輝, 614–61
- Lu Shih-jung 嘉世榮, 475, 478, 483, 484, 600
- Lu-shib-szu* 錄事司, 593
- Lü Wen-huan, 433
- Luan 漾, 418
- Luan-ch'eng 漾城, 74
- Lun yü* 論語 (Analects of Confucius), *see* *Analects* (Confucius)
- Lung-ch'üan, 470
- Lung-hsi chün wang* 隴西郡王, 167
- Lung-hsü, *see* Sheng-tsung (Liao emperor) (r. 982–1031)
- Lung-hua 龍化, 59
- Lung-yu 隴右, 160
- luxury, laws against, 275–6
- Ma-mou-sha 馬某沙, 537
- Ma Tsung 馬總, 33
- Maeda Masana 前田正名, 179
- magicoreligious school, 317
- magistrate(s) (*hsien-yin*), 595
- Mahmūd-shā 馬某沙, 537
- Mahmūd Yalavach 牙刺瓦赤, 374, 375, 377, 378, 383, 386, 387, 398; opposition to Töregene, 384; reappointment as head of Branch Secretariat, 408; reforms of, 381; and tax system, 401
- Mai-chu-ting 麥朮丁, 497
- Mai-lü 買驥, 528
- Mai-nu 買奴, 534
- Maitreya (Buddha), 316
- Majad al-Din, 麥朮丁, 497
- Makino Shūji 牧野修二, 596–24
- Mamlük, 405, 412, 423
- Man (tribe) 407
- manager of governmental affairs of the Secretariat (*Chung-shu Sheng p'ing-chang cheng-shib*), 495, 497, 510, 528, 533, 537, 550; Chang Kuei, 525, 531
- Manchu language, 33, 216–17
- Manchuria, 3, 4, 5, 11, 46, 47, 66, 73, 138, 217, 218, 220, 223, 261, 268, 277
- cattle breeding in, 293
- Chin (Jurchen) in/and, 40, 141, 220, 221, 240, 257–9, 279, 281, 285, 294, 296
- Jurchen script used in, 282
- Liao (Khitan) conquests in, 53, 67
- Mongolian campaigns in, 353 *map*
- rebellion in, 256 *map*, 487–8
- salt production in, 295
- Sung-mo region, 14
- Manchurian language, 266
- Manchus, 215–16, 217, 281, 305; banner (*niru*) system, 273
- Mandate of Heaven theory, 623–4, 626; Mongol claim to, 348
- Mang-ko-la 忙哥刺, 505
- Manggala, 505
- Mangghud (lineage), 337
- mangonel, 433
- Manicheism, Manicheans, 315, 630, 643, 644
- Mañjusri, 461
- Manshishi kenkyū, chūsei* 滿鮮史研究、中世, 594–19
- manufacture: Chin society, 294–7; Yüan regime, 562–3
- Manzi, 21
- Mao Shu, 458
- maritime commerce, 475–6
- maritime trade administration, 597, 599–600

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

823

- maritime trade superintendants (*t'i-chü shib-po shib*), 430
- Maritime Trade Bureaus (*Shib-po ssu*), 599–600
- Maritime Trade Supervisorate (*Shib-po t'i-chü ssu*), 523
- marriage, 8, 29, 46, 589; Chin society, 286, 288–9, 290; Mongolian tribes, 324; slaves, 287
- marriage alliances: Khitan/Hsia, 140; Liao, 104; Sung/Tangut, 196; T'ang/Khitan, 49; Tangut, 169, 206
- marriage laws, 554
- Masūd Beg, 383, 386, 398
- material culture, Khitan, 46
- medical schools, 451
- medicine, 34, 306, 451
- medleys (literature), 309
- Melik 蔑里, 395
- Men-hsia shing 門下省, 78, 269, 588
- meng-an mou-k'o* system 猛安謀克, 267, 272, 273–7, 278, 279, 284, 285, 286–7, 291, 293, 302
- Meng Ch'i 孟琪, 487
- Meng-ku (state), 15
- Meng-ku chün* 蒙古軍, 601
- Meng-ku Han-ling yüan* 蒙古翰林院, 605, 606
- Meng-ku kuo-tzu-chien* 蒙古國子監, 606
- Meng-ku kuo-tzu-bsüeh* 蒙古國子學, 606
- Meng-ku nu-li chib yen-chiu* 蒙古奴隸制研究, 614–60
- Meng-ku shib yen-chiu lun-wen-chi* 蒙古史研究論文集, 614–61
- Meng-ku tzu* 蒙古字, 466
- Meng-ku tzu-bsüeh* 蒙古字學, 606
- Meng-tzu 孟子, 33, 34, 155, 271
- Meng-wu, 329–30; *see also* Mongols
- Menggeser 忙哥撒兒, 393–4, 396–7
- merchant households (classification), 613
- merchants: influence with Mongolian hierarchy, 380–1; under Khubilai's rule, 449–50, 452; north China, 377; Sung, 430; taxes on, 96, 474; *see also* *ortogh* merchants the Merkid Bayan
- (great minister under Tugh Temür and Toghön Temür), 525, 543, 547–9, 553, 556, 559, 566–72, 573, 578
- Merkid tribe, 335–6, 342, 354, 543, 567; and Temujin, 339, 342
- messianic doctrines/movements, 315, 316, 663
- Metropolitan Censorate, 604
- Mi-chih 米脂, 160
- Mi-na-ku 密納古 (*see also* Mi-na-k'o 密納克), 156
- Mi-nag, 156
- Mi-yao 弓藥, 156, 159
- Miao-ch'uan 邇川, *see* Le-tu 樂都
- mid-Yüan period, 490–560; end of, 557; in retrospect, 557–60
- Middle East, 423, 429, 430; Mongolian campaigns in, 368–70, 374, 417, 421, 433
- Middle Kingdom, 420
- Mieh-li 蔑里 (Melik), 395
- Mien-yao 缅藥, 156
- migrant people (*liu min*), 663
- migrations, 157, 159, 341, 662
- military (the)
- and agriculture, 95
  - Chin (Jurchen), 117–20, 223, 224, 225, 284, 302
  - civilian conscriptees in, 648–9
  - civilian control of, 648–9
  - debilitation of, 560
  - Hsia/Tangut, 182–3, 202, 203
  - Khubilai and, 452–3, 471
  - Mongols' reliance on, 588
  - multiethnic (Mongol), 482, 484
  - power bases in, 549
  - and succession struggles, 496
  - Yüan, 576–7, 600–2
- military affairs/actions (Liao/Khitan), 53, 54, 57–60, 64, 65–7, 80–1, 82–3, 84, 91, 117–20
- border problems, 87
- against Chin, 73–4

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

824

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

- defensive strategy, 83, 85  
war with Sung, 85–6
- military affairs/campaigns (Mongolian empire), 327, 492, 649  
and civilian bureaucracy, 588, 590  
costs of, 484, 487  
financing, 449, 473  
of Khubilai, 416, 417–18, 429–45, 488  
proposed by Möngke, 400, 401–7  
in reign of Temür, 501–2  
in Töregene regency, 383
- military alliances, Chin-Sung, 224–5
- military artisans, 653, 654
- military authority/bureaucracy: Chin, 269; Yüan, 578, 590, 592, 593, 600, 601; Tangut, 197–8
- military camp(s), *see ordo/ordu*
- military code, Hsia (Tangut), 198
- military colonies (Chin/Jurchen), 290, 291, 292, 294, 304
- military confederations, 45
- military conscriptions, Mongols, 363, 364; *see also* conscription
- military defense system (T'ang), 7, 8, 9, 10
- military democracy, Jurchens as, 24
- military discipline, Mongolian army, 338, 346, 347
- military elite (Hsia/Tangut), 200
- military enslavement, 287, 288
- military expenditure, Sung, 431
- military governor of Jurchen (*Nü-chieh chieh-tu shih*) (title), 141, 142, 221
- military households (*a'urugb, ao-lu*), 595, 602, 613, 614, 648–53
- military households (*chün hu*), 649; categories of, 649–53; hereditary, 452; retained in Ming dynasty, 656
- military jurisdiction, 587, 588
- military personnel: in Chin bureaucracy, 271, 272–3
- military policy, T'ang, 7–8
- military power: and restoration movement, 546, 547; in succession struggles, 506, 507, 544
- military provincial governors (*chieh-tu shih*), 50, 220
- military recruitment (Mongolian empire), 428; census and, 401, 403, 404; under Khubilai, 453; *see also* conscription
- military regulations (Hsia), 183
- military regimes, 6, 10, 37
- military structure/organization: Chin (Jurchen), 265–6, 273–7 (*see also* *meng-an mou-k'o* system); Chinggis khan, 345–7; decimal system, 342, 343, 345–6; Liao (Khitan), 276, 277; Mongols, 27, 651–3; under Yesün Temür, 539
- military supplies and equipment, Mongolian control over, 453
- military technology, 263–4; in Mongol conquest of Sung, 430, 431, 433, 442
- militia forces (*t'u'an-chieh*), 56, 576–7, 583
- min* 民, 650
- Min-chiang* 民匠, 607
- Ming 明, 155, 562, 578, 581, 582, 620, 628, 633, 647, 652, 656
- Ming armies, 647
- Ming art, 312
- Ming Bureau of Interpreters, 21, 32
- Ming dynasty, 2, 155, 268, 283, 305, 318, 451, 556, 561, 562, 582, 586, 628, 633, 647–8
- Buddhist canon of, 315
- capital city, 17
- censuses, 620
- civil service exams, 517
- founding of, 30, 42, 652
- household classification system retained in, 652
- lessons learned from Yüan decentralization, 584, 585
- literacy in, 468
- reunification of China, 578
- rise of, 581
- Ming-chou 洛州, 107

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

825

- Ming-tao chi-shuo* 鳴道集說 (Collected opinions for propagating the Truth) (*Li Chih-ch'un*), 315
- Ming-tsung** 明宗, *see* Khoshila (Ming-tsung) (r. 1329)
- Ming-tsung**, later T'ang emperor, *see* Li Ssu-yüan
- mingghan**, structural element of Mongolian army, 345–7, 361
- mining, 296–7
- mining households (classification), 613
- ministers, power of, 548–9, 558–9
- ministries, 427, 589–91
- Ministry of Personnel (Li-pu), 589
- Ministry of Punishments (Hsing-pu), 589, 590–1
- Ministry of Revenue (Hu-pu), 589
- Ministry of Rites (Li-pu), 589–90
- Ministry of War (Ping-pu), 589, 590, 591
- Ministry of Works (Kung-pu), 470, 589, 591, 654
- Mo-chou 莫州, 82, 104, 105, 108
- Mo-ho 鞑鞨 (Korean Malgal) tribes, 217–18
- Mo-i clan 没唃 (Tangut), 189, 190
- Mo-ku-ssu 磨古斯, 138
- Mo-ti (Chu Yu-chen), 64
- Mo-ts'ang clan 没藏 (Tangut), 190, 191
- Mo-ts'ang O-p'ang 没藏訛龐, 190–1, 192
- Mobile Presidential Council (Hsing-t'ai shang-shu sheng), 267–8
- Mokchong 穆宗 (Koryō king), 104, 111
- monarchic autocracy, 239
- monasteries, Buddhist, 462, 479–80
- monetary economy, 290, 402
- monetary reforms, of Khaishan, 511–12
- monetary reserves, 500–1, 509
- money, 35–6; *see also* paper money
- money supply (Liao/Khitian), 97
- Mönggü Bukha, 359
- Mönge 蒙哥 (Mongolian khaghan) (r. 1251–59; later canonized as Hsien-tsung), 206, 383, 388, 389, 414, 463, 533, 617, 623, 636
- accession to khaghanate, 417
- administrative apparatus, 396–8
- campaigns of conquest, 400, 401–7, 417, 418, 424, 426, 436
- commissions to Khubilai and Hülegü, 407–9
- death of, 409–11, 416, 421, 422
- imperial design, 398–400
- new conquests, 403–7
- plan for conquest of southern China, 421
- purge, consolidation, and legitimization, 393–6
- reign of, 390–41
- relation with Khubilai, 408–9, 417, 419–20
- reverence toward, 457
- sons of, 444
- and succession crisis, 411, 412
- Mongolia, 5, 45, 60, 110, 121, 151, 251, 393, 473, 627
- challenges to rule of Khubilai in, 445
- defense system in, 502
- Liao (Khitan) conquests in, 10, 65, 67
- northern, 153
- pasturelands, 453
- relations with Chin (Jurchen), 239, 621
- salt production in, 295
- and Temüjin, 321–42
- tribes of, 138, 321–4
- Mongolian aristocracy, 505–7, 529, 534
- Mongolian army, 12, 13, 473
- action in reign of Temür, 502–3
- administrative functions of, 346–7
- in campaigns against Chin (Jurchen), 351–2 358–60
- Chinese units in, 363
- conquest of China, 622–3
- conquest of steppe tribes, 321
- and conquest of Sung, 429–30
- divided among Chinggis khan's sons and relatives, 367
- foreign expeditions, 482–9
- foreigners in, 403, 431, 601, 629–30, 649–50

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

826

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

- mobilization, 401–7
- size of, 345–6
- subdued states’ contributing to, 349, 350, 358
- Mongolian candidates for office, civil service exams for, 517
- Mongolian character in Yüan government, 559
- Mongolian conquest/expansion, 36, 37, 155, 205–14, 308, 345, 399, 417, 617
- captive peoples and nations as property in, 629, 636, 661–4
- first invasion of Hsi Hsia, 209 *map*
- internal reform and, 400
- justification of, 347–8
- of Khubilai, 429–45
- mass executions in, 356
- military conscription in, 363
- mobilizations for, 401–7
- renewed, 369–72
- and social order, 632
- Mongolian court, 17; brutality at, 471; promotion of theater by, 467–8
- Mongolian Directorate of Education (*Meng-ku kuo-tzu chien*), 606
- Mongolian documents, translated into Chinese, 556
- Mongolian dynasty, 436, 437; threats to, 443
- Mongolian elites, 421–2, 520, 560; and Chinese subjects, 491–2; and Yüan government, 559, 561
- Mongolian emperors, *see* Mongolian rulers
- Mongolian empire, 2
  - administrative restructuring, 372–5
  - apogee, 390–411
  - Branch Secretariats, 374–5, 383, 384, 386, 398, 408
  - capitals of, xxix *tab*, 423, 445, 448, 473, 488, 561–2
  - Central Secretariat (*Chung-shu sheng*), 386, 396–7, 398, 401, 424, 426, 427, 428
  - Chin state absorbed into, 290–1
- Chinggis khan and, 342–65
- China in, 617, 625
- contradiction between Mongolian and Chinese concepts of, 558
- Court of Imperial Attendants (*Shih-cheng fu*), 604
- Court of Imperial Etiquette (*Hsüan-hui yüan*), 601
- Court of Justice for Uighurs (*Tu-hu fu*), 591
- Court of Imperial Sacrifices, 469
- Court of the Imperial Stud, 453
- Department of State Affairs (*Shang-shu sheng*), 510, 512, 513, 514
- dependence on Uighurs for personnel, 350
- Directorate for the Diffusion of Confucian Texts, 452
- Directorate General for the Management of Artisans, 470
- Directorate of the Palace Library, 563
- Directorate of Waterways (*Tu-shui chien*), 597, 599
- early conquests, 348–50
- on eve of civil war, 411–13
- as family patrimony of Chinggisid family, 24
- fraternal combat regarding, 422–9
- incorporated into China, 560
- languages of, 397
- of mid-Yüan khaghans, 490–2
- Möngke’s grand design for, 398–400
- “Moving” Secretariats, 397–8
- new conquests, 403–7
- organization of, 365–90
- Privy Council (*Shu-mi yüan*), 427
- rise of, 321–413
- signs of decline, 398–501
- special status of Tanguts in, 206
- succession crises, 386, 411–13
- supreme rule of, 616
- Tangut campaign, 364–5
- tension between steppe and sedentary parts of, 558

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

827

- transfer of power, 367–8, 382, 384  
 triumph of Yüan dynasty over, 546  
 Tugh Temür suzerainty over, 550–1  
*see also* Yüan
- Mongolian federation, 251; rise of, 245
- Mongolian Han-lin Academy (*Meng-ku Han-lin yüan*), 605–6
- Mongolian heritage/traditions, 454, 538; in capital city, 455–7; incorporated into Yüan legal code, 518–19; and rule of Khubilai, 421–2, 429, 443, 459, 465, 471–3, 488–9, 491; treatment of religions in, 541
- Mongolian homeland, given to Ögödei, 366, 367
- Mongolian language, 20, 36, 45, 46, 216, 397, 465–6; translations into, 33, 34, 35, 459; in Yüan government, 563, 606
- Mongolian language schools (*Meng-ku tzu-hsüeh*), 606
- Mongolian literati, 610
- Mongolian National University (*Meng-ku kuo-tzu hsüeh*), 606
- Mongolian nobility, 325, 522; appanages granted to, 428; challenge to Khubilai, 422, 423
- Mongolian officials: in administration of Yesün Temür, 537, 538; power and privileges of, 526–7; in reign of Ayurbarwada, 519, 526
- Mongolian plateau, 323, 342
- Mongolian princes, *see* imperial princes (Mongols)
- Mongolian raids, 275, 332
- Mongolian rule, 598; Chinese adaptations to, 627–40; Chinese society under, 616–64; debarbarization of, 306; evolution of, 596; in north China, 321–413; resistance to, 476, 633–4; Taoism under, 317
- Mongolian rulers, 624–5; genealogy of, xxvii *fig*; regnal titles, xxviii *tab*
- Mongolian scholars, 554–5
- Mongolian script (*Meng-ku tzu*), 345, 466, 570, 605–6
- Mongolian society, 608–15; place of artisans in, 654–5
- Mongolian tribes distribution of, 321–4  
 economic conditions of, 326–9  
 economic interaction with China, 328  
 Liao (Khitan) relations with, 99  
 and Mongolian state, 346–7  
 mythical ancestors of, 330–1  
 social order, 324–6  
 unification of, 331
- Mongols, 12, 16, 40, 97, 217, 266, 285, 319, 324  
 adaptations of Chinese governance structures, 591–2, 600, 614–15, 624, 625–7, 628, 629  
 administration of north China, 360–2, 363, 364  
 attacks on Chin (Jurchen), 244, 256, 257, 259–65, 260 *map*, 270, 276, 277, 301, 318, 350–2, 357–60  
 body guards, *see* *kesig*  
 Bureau of Affairs of the Imperial Clan (Ta tsung-cheng-fu), 28–9  
 campaign in the west, 352–7, 355 *map*  
 centralism, 26–7  
 and Chin, 235–8, 250–4, 299, 320  
 in China, 41, 42, 43, 428  
 and Chinese customs, 554  
 Chinese loan words, 13  
 conquered Tangut, 155  
 conquest of Sung, 429–36, 432 *map*  
 Court of Justice for Uighurs (Tu-hu fu), 591  
 custom of distributing conquered peoples to members of ruling family, 608  
 decline and disintegration of power of, 332  
 demands made on conquered peoples, 363–4, 370  
 Dhūta sect under, 316

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

828

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

- diets/tribal convocations, *see*  
*khuriltais*
- differentiation of law and legal  
procedures, 28–9
- early history of, 329–42
- economy of, 11
- effect of Chinese civilization on, 646–7
- expansionist ideology of, 18 (*see also*  
Mongolian conquest/expansion)  
favored in examination system, 564  
and the frontier, 7, 10  
governance, 588 (*see also* governance;  
government)  
ideology, 347–8  
imperial guards (*kesig*) system, 272  
(*see also* *kesig*)  
internal divisions among, 324  
Khubilai as khaghan of, 454, 471, 487,  
491, 501–2  
legal cases involving, 591  
military campaigns, *see* military  
affairs/campaigns (Mongolian  
empire)  
military system, 27, 651–3  
Mongolian tribes united as, 343  
offices reserved for, 596  
and *ortogh* merchants, 658–9  
painters' hostility toward, 469  
peace among, 503–4  
personalized authority, 22  
policy in north China, 215, 362–4  
power and unification of, 205, 206  
psychological edge of terror held by,  
484  
realization of vulnerability among,  
484  
relations with Chin (Jurchen), 238–9  
and restoration movement, 547  
reunification of China under, 657  
right to bear arms, 595  
rising power of, 246, 249, 250  
slavery under, 288  
social structure, 330–1  
territorial conflict, 503–4
- tributary relations, 14–16  
unification of steppe tribes, 321  
vassal status of, 238  
wars of conquest, 565  
works translated under, 310  
world rule concept of, 2, 17–18, 348,  
400, 413  
writing system, 32  
in Yüan class system, 610–11, 631, 633,  
634, 635, 637, 638, 642  
Yüan hao-wen and, 307  
and Yüan government, 563, 588  
*see also* Yüan dynasty  
monks, state regulation of, 313, 314,  
316–17  
moral absolutism, 584  
moral reawakening, campaign of, 581–2  
moral revolution, in/and regionalization of  
Yüan rule, 582–4, 586  
morality, Confucian, 553–4  
*mou* 犀, 284, 292, 293, 303, 313  
*mou-k'o* 謀克 (personal regiments), 23,  
273–4, 276, 302  
mourning rites, 589–90  
Mu-jung 慕容, 44, 156  
Mu-jung fu-yün 慕容伏允, 158  
*Mu-ming chung-kao* 牧民忠告, 597–26  
Mu-na 木納, 156  
Mu-pa-la 木八刺, 528  
Mu-tsung 穆宗 (Ching; Shu-lu; Liao  
emperor) (r. 951–69), 20, 72, 85, 87,  
88, 89, 94; death of, 84; reign of,  
81–4  
Mu-ya 木雅, 156  
Mu-yeh Mountain 木葉山, 52, 143, 146  
*mu-yu* 幕友, 596  
Mubārak 木八刺 (minister under  
Temüder), 528  
Mubārak Shāh, son of Khara Hülegü, 395,  
411  
Muhammad (sultan), 354–6; envoy of,  
362–3  
Mukhali 木華黎, 210, 259–61, 260 *map*,  
326, 361, 529, 550; campaigns

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

829

- against Chin, 357–60; death of, 370, 373; viceroy (north China), 362, 363, 364  
 mulberry trees, 291, 293  
 multiethnicity, 1, 7, 10, 517, 563  
 multilinguality, 30–6, 646  
 multistate system, 16–18, 20, 21  
 “Muslim” (Hui-hui) clerks, 563  
 Muslim financiers, in government of Temür, 497  
 Muslim merchants, 481, 540; *see also* merchants  
 Muslims, 364, 451, 532  
     in administration of Yesün Temür, 537, 538, 540  
     in government of Khubilai, 460, 474, 479, 481  
     in government of Tugh Temür, 549–50  
     merchant associations of, 449  
     and restoration movement, 547  
     right to bear arms, 595  
     in Yüan China, 643  
     in Yüan government, 563, 596  
 Mustasim, 404  
 myriarchies (*wan-hu fu*), 601, 650, 651  
 myriarchs, 452  
 Na-lan 鞑靼, 268–39  
*na-pao* 納寶, *see na-po*  
*na-po* 掠鉢 (also *na-pao* 納寶), 64, 97  
 Naiman, 155, 323, 341, 348, 354, 356; and  
     Mongolian state, 346, 611; Temüjin  
     campaign against, 338–40, 341–2,  
     343, 345  
 Nai-man-t’ai 乃蠻台, 550  
 Nai-yen 乃顏, 542  
 Nakhu, 391, 392, 393  
 Nan-chao 南詔 (Ta-li) kingdom, 3–5,  
     405–7  
 Nan-ching, 16  
*nan-fu tsai-hsiang* 南府宰相, 77  
 Nan Han 南漢 (Southern Han), 85  
*nan jen* 南人, 428, 610, 631, 632  
*nan-ju* 南儒, 604  
*nan-mien* 南面, 77  
 Nan-p’o 南陂, coup d'état at, 532–4  
 Nan-shan 南山 Tanguts, 161, 169  
*nan ta-wang* 南大王, 77  
 Nan T’ang 南唐 (Southern T’ang), 71–2,  
     80–1, 83, 85  
*Nan-yüan* 南院, 64  
 Nanking 南京, 17, 542, 583; Ming dynasty  
     in, 581  
 Nao-chou, 435  
*Nao-nao* 喫噉, 554  
 Narathihapate, king of Pagan, 485–7  
 national budget; Chin state, 301–4  
 National College (*Kuo-tzu chien*), 606  
 National College for the Study of the  
     Muslim Script, 479  
 national history (Liao/Khitian), 93; bureau  
     for compiling, 130  
 national identity, Jurchen, 244–5, 281  
 nationalism, 257, 282  
 native administrative institutions and  
     personnel: in Mongolian  
     administration, 373–4, 380, 398; in  
     Mongolian army, 404; in service of  
     Khubilai, 416  
 nativism: versus acculturation, 21; of Chin  
     (Jurchen), 250; of Liao (Khitian),  
     116, 127, 130–1; of Hsia (Tangut),  
     181–2, 192  
 natural disasters, 199, 447  
     Chin state, 245, 246, 247, 254  
     cumulative effects of, 574  
     and downfall of Yüan, 41, 585–6  
     effect on population, 622  
     government relief measures, 303, 552,  
     569, 574, 585–6  
     north China, 565  
     reign of Tao-tsung, 132–3, 137, 140  
     reign of Tugh Temür, 551, 552  
 natural sciences, in Chin state, 306  
 naval power, navies, 430; Mongol, 431,  
     433, 650; Sung, 18, 241, 242, 430,  
     435

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

830

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

- Nayan 乃顏, 488, 542  
 Needham, Joseph, 451  
*nei chiang-chih* 內降旨, 508  
*nei-hsüeh* 內學, 200  
*nei-shih* 內史, 535  
 Neo-Confucianism, 459, 516–17, 627  
 Nestorian Christianity, Nestorianism, 319, 323, 414, 415, 464, 596, 630, 644  
 New Year ceremonial embassies, 222, 239, 247, 261  
 newly adhered armies (*bsin-fu chün*), 601, 649, 650  
 Ni-li 泥禮, see Nieh-li  
 Nieh-li 泥里, 涅禮 (also Ya-li 牙里); also Ni-li, 51–3, 135, 142  
 Nieh-lu-ku 涅魯古, 127  
*nien-hao* 年號, 568  
 Ning-chia su, *see* Ai-tsung (Ning-chia-su; Shou-li; Shou-hsu; Chin emperor) (r. 1224–34)  
 Ning-chiang 寧江, 141, 142  
 Ning-hsia 寧夏, 36  
 Ning-ling-ko 窜凌哥, 189–90  
 Ning-tsung 寧宗, 57 *see* Irinjibal (Yüan emperor) (r. 1332)  
 Ning-tu, 523  
*niu-t'ou shui* 牛頭稅, 304  
 “Noble savages,” Mongols as, 626  
*nökör, nököd* (companions), 22, 80, 326, 398, 608; members of, in Mongolian administration, 373; of Temüjin, 343, 344  
 nomadic armies, 346  
 nomadic camp (*ayil*), 325, 327  
 nomadic confederations, 323, 325  
 nomadic empires, 321, 329  
 nomadic peoples, 11–12, 44, 54, 138  
     Khitan control of, 67  
     and Khubilai’s rule, 447, 448  
     raids by, 442–3, 444–5  
     social organization of, 628  
     succession in, 48, 57  
     tax collection, 402  
     tax on herds of, 390  
     nomadism, 328  
     *see also* nomadism, pastoral nomadism  
 Nomukhan, 443–4, 445  
 non-Han peoples, 7, 9  
 norms (*chiu tien*), 568  
 north China, 6, 593  
     Chin (Jurchen) in/and, 39–40, 42, 235, 297  
     drought, famine, 205  
     foreign domination of, 36–7, 305  
     government of, 165, 203  
     Khubilai’s reign, 407–9, 445–54, 476–8  
     legal history of, 291  
     Liao (Khitan) and, 65–7, 65 *fig*, 69–71, 72, 73, 77, 80–1, 83 *fig*  
     Mongolian administration of, 360–2, 363, 364, 374, 375–81, 386, 387, 414–15, 565–6  
     Mongolian conquest of, 210, 366, 612, 622–3  
     Mongolian policy in, 362–4  
     Mongolian rule in, 321–413  
     new state created in, 230–2  
     non-Chinese invasions, 215  
     population, 621  
     population categories in, 403  
     rebellion in, 387  
     resistance to Chin in, 230  
     rice grown in, 577  
     social change, 657–8  
 Northern Administration (Liao/Khitan), 25, 63–4, 77, 79–80, 127; T’ang legal code in, 94  
 northern chancellery (Liao/Khitan), 115, 133, 142  
 Northern Ch’i, 49, 591  
 Northern Chou, 10  
 Northern Commission for Military Affairs (Liao/Khitan), 77, 129  
 northern commissioner for military affairs (*pei-yüan shu-mi shih*), 87, 90, 105, 125, 139  
 “Northern Court,” 109

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

831

- Northern Han 北漢, 6, 75, 81, 82, 84, 85–6, 167  
 northern prime minister (*pei-fu tsai-hsiang*)  
     Liao/Khitian, 87, 88, 129, 136  
 Northern Region (Pei-mien), 77–8  
 northern steppe, 53  
 Northern Sung, 196, 205, 311  
     art, 311, 312  
     capital, 657  
     censuses, 620  
     Chin (Jurchen) conquest of, 226–30,  
         *228 map*, 657  
     Chinese population under, 283  
     Chinese traditions of, 319  
     fall of, 167  
     literati, 307  
     literature, 307  
     philosophy, 305  
     reform/conservative factions, 578  
     scientific heritage of, 306  
     Northern Sung dynasty, 224  
     northern tribes, pastoralism, 94  
     northwestern tribes, pacification of, 91  
 Northern Wei, 44, 45  
 Northern Wei period, 44–5  
 Nou-chin 粢斤, *see Ch'in-ai*, Empress Dowager  
 novel (the), 468  
 Novgorod, 401  
 noyan, 361, 548, 559  
*Nung sang chi yao* (Essential of agriculture and sericulture), 519, 598–9  
 Nü-ch'en 女真, *see Jurchen* 女真  
 Nü-chin 女真, *see Jurchen* 女真  
*Nung-cheng yüan* 農政院, 598  
*Nü-chih chieh-tu shih* 女直節度使, 141  
*Nung sang chi yao* 農桑輯要, 519  
 O-chi-na 額濟納, 154  
 O-chou 鄂州, 410, 411, 421; siege of, 422, 423  
 oath-letters, 20, 108–9, 225, 227–9, 233–4  
 “obedient” Jurchen (*shun Nü-chih*),  
     civilized 141  
 occupational classes, closed, 648  
 occupational groups: treatment of, by  
     Khubilai, 450–2  
 occupational status, hereditary, 628, 632, 648, 656  
 occupational mobility (*yüan*), 635, 636  
 office (*yin*), hereditary privilege to, 87, 92, 200, 362, 602  
 Office for Christian Clergy (Ch'ung fu ssu), 464  
 Office for the Stimulation of Agriculture (*Ch'üan-nung ssu*), 447  
 Office of Historiography (Liao/Khitian), 79  
 offices: conferment of, 14, 49, for ethnic groups, 611, reserved for certain classes, 636  
 officials: personal power of, 25; standing of, 29–30  
 Oghul Khaimish, 391, 392, 393, 394, 402; regency of, 388–90  
 Ögödei 窝闊台 (Mongolian Khagan)  
     (r. 1229–41; canonized as Tai-tsung), 363, 387, 388, 395, 401, 411, 416, 428, 442, 550, 636  
     administrative innovations, 374  
     campaign against Chin (Jurchen), 262–3  
     chosen successor to Chinggis khan, 414  
     death of, 382–4, 385  
     enthroned, 367–8  
     government of, 588  
     and Khubilai, 415  
     military under, 650  
     ministers of, 383–4  
     Möngke's challenge to house of, 417  
     reign of, 365–82, 522, 629  
     reverence toward, 457  
     and succession, 384–5, 392, 396  
 Ögödei khanate, 491, 501, 503  
 Ögödei *ulus*, 504  
 Ögödeid line, 394  
 Ögödeid princes, 384  
 Ögödeids, 386–7, 389; and Möngke, 394–5; and succession, 390–3, 396; and succession crisis, 412

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

832

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

- Ögrünch, 394  
 Ökin Barkhagh, 336, 338  
 “Old Jurchen” idiom, 217  
 Öljei, 495, 496, 497, 498, 499, 533  
 Öljeitu (İl-khân), 503  
 Onan River, 324, 341  
 Onan-Kerülen area, 330, 338  
 Ong khan (To’oril), 206, 251, 335; and Temüjin, 335–9, 340–1  
 Ongchan, 541, 543, 545  
 Ongghochatu, 509; regicide at, 545–7  
 Onggirad (clan), 286, 524  
 Onggirad (lineage), 333  
 Onggirad (Khonggirad) (tribe), 61, 246, 323; and Mongols, 332; 347  
 Önggûd (tribe), 12, 207, 323, 328; and Mongols, 349, 351, 611; relation with Temüjin, 335, 342  
 Önggûd clan, 286  
 open society ideal, 627  
 Orda, 368, 385  
 orders of submission, 348  
 ordination diplomas (Buddhist), 313, 314  
*ordo/ordu*, 22–3, 91, 96, 112, 138; of Temüjin, 337  
 Ordos, 7, 10, 13, 65, 66, 68, 100, 150, 165, 168, 169, 193, 201, 210, 323, 342 in Hsia state, 154  
 Mongol invasion of, 207, 359  
 Tangut settlement in, 158–61  
 T’o-pa clan control of, 163  
 trade through, 162  
 Ordos residents: resettled in Ling-chou, 170–2  
 Ordos tribes, 165  
*ordu*, see *ordo*  
 Ordu Balaq, 65  
 Orghina, 395  
 origin myth(s): Khitan, 51–2; Mongol, 330–1  
 Orkhon River, 65, 151  
 Orkhon River valley, 138, 323; Temüjin control of, 341–2, 347  
 Örlüg Temür, 533, 544  
 Oronar family, 497  
*ortogh* 幹脫 (merchant associations), 449, 540  
*ortogh* households (classification), 613  
*ortogh* merchants, 377, 388, 397, 399; administration of, 597, 599, 600; Möngke brought under control, 400; Mongolian patronage of, 612; Mongols and, 658–9; right to bear arms, 595  
 Ötüken-yish (mountains), 347–8  
 Ou-yang Hsiu 歐陽修, 75–21, 124, 307  
 Ou-yang Hsüan 歐陽玄, 529–174, 554, 576  
 outer vassals (*wai-ch’en*), 14; Hsi Hsia, of Chin, 226; Mongols, of Chin, 238  
 overlords, 14–16  
 overstaffing (*jung kuan*), 564  
 ownership, Mongolian concept of, 614  
 oxen, 292  
 Oyirad (tribe), 324, 328, 339, 342; capitulation to Mongols, 348; rebellion, 356  
 Pa-la 巴刺, 51  
 Pa-li clan 巴利 (Tangut), 160  
 Pa-pai hsi-fu 八百媳婦, 501  
 Pa-pu sha 八不沙, 557  
*Pa-shih-i hua-t’u* 八十一化圖 (Illustrations of the eighty-one conversions), 420  
 Pa-ssu-pa 八思巴, *see* ‘Phags-pa lama  
 pacification: by central government, 576–8, 583–4; of Ho-hsi, 179  
 pacification campaigns, 166, 170  
 pacification commissioners (*bsüan-fu shih*), 597  
 pacification commissioners (*bsüan wei shih*), 460, 461  
 Pacification Offices (*Hsüan-wei ssu*), 424, 594  
 Paekche, 2  
 Pagan (kingdom), 485  
 Pai-chu 拜住, 525, 529  
*pai-hao* 白號, 285  
*pai-hua* 白話, 465

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

833

- Pai-lan 白蘭, prince of, 541  
 Pai-yün kuan 白雲觀, 318–83  
*p'ai-hang* 排行 284–5  
*p'ai-tzu* 牌子, 183  
 painting, 311, 312, 642; Khubilai's support for, 468–9  
 palace edicts (*nei chiang-chib*), 508  
 Palace Provisions Commission (Hsüan-hui yüan), 524  
 Pamir, 4  
 Pamirs, 151  
 P'an-chou 潘州, 172  
 P'an-lo-chih 潘羅支, 172–3, 175  
 P'ang Chi 龐籍, 187, 188  
 P'ang Hsün 龐勛 rebellion, 163  
 Pao-chou 保州, 抱州, 113  
 Pao-pa 保八, 510–11, 514  
*pao-yin* 包銀, 532  
 paper money, 36, 299, 464, 500, 514
  - Chin (Jurchen), 300–1
  - credibility of, 501
  - fiscal problems and, 475
  - Mongolian empire, 402, 418, 447, 449
  - government issues of, 552, 575, 576, 577, 585
  - reform of, 479
  - value of (Khaishan reign), 511, 512
  - Yüan regulations regarding, 589
 Parhae 渤海, *see* Po-hai  
 pastoral economy, 8, 11, 325  
 pastoral nomadism, 44, 94, 217, 443, 608;
  - Chin (Jurchen) state, 291–4
  - Mongols, 325, 326–9, 330
 patrimonial feudalism: of Mongols, 382, 491, 493, 539, 559, 560, 561;
  - Mongolian empire as patrimony, 491, 493, 558, 562–3
 patronage of arts, Khubilai, 467–71, 472  
 Pavilion of the Star of Literature (K'uei-chang ko) (institution), 610  
*pax Mongolica*, 643  
 peace: Chin (Jurchen) attempts at, with Mongols, 261, 263; Hsia state, 155, 205; Liao empire, 123, 137–8, 144–6; mid-Yüan, 557–8; in reign of Temür, 501–4; Sung-Chin, 235, 244, 248–9  
 peasant households (classification), 613  
 peasants (China), 446–7, 448, 452  
 Pei 倍 (king of Po-hai; Khitan name, T'u-yü; son of A-pao-chi), 63, 66, 68–9, 70, 75, 112  
*pei-fu tsai-hsiang* 北府宰相, 77  
*pei-mien* 北面, 77  
 Pei-p'ing 北平, 561  
*Pei p'ing wang* (prince of the pacification of the north), 443  
*Pei ta-wang* 北大王, 77  
 Pei-t'ing 北庭, 177  
*Pei yüan* 北院, 64  
 P'ei-man 裴滿, 286–39  
 Peking, 2, 7, 37, 49, 50, 58, 75, 79, 86, 113, 226, 270, 296
  - Chin (Jurchen) population in, 279
  - dependent on transport for food, 297
  - as capital, 40, 300, 454–7
  - as national metropolis, 16, 17
  - parts constructed under Chin (Jurchen), 312–13
  - imperial city, 312–13
  - see also* Ta-tu*pen-hu* 本戶, 286  
 “people of the steppe,” 645  
 people of varied categories (*se-mu-jen*), 630–1  
 “peoples of the felt tent”: Temujin sovereignty over, 343; unification of, 321, 324  
 “peoples of the forest” (*hsı-yin irgen*), 328  
 peoples of the various nations (*chu-kuo jen*), 630  
 People's Republic of China, Inner Mongolian Autonomous Region, 32  
 Persia, 433; Hülegü's Ilkhanate of, 454  
 Persian language, 36, 397, 532, 563  
 Persians, 642; in Khulilai's government, 451–2; in Mongolian army, 404, 431

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

834

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

- personal bodyguard, *see kesig*  
 personal names, system of: sinicization and, 284–5  
 personal regiments (*mou-k'o*), *see mou-k'o*  
 personality principle (*ius sanguinis*), 27–8, 29  
 personnel selection: Chin (Jurchen) state, 270–3; *see also* civil service  
 'Phags-pa lama 八思巴, 32, 420, 459, 461–2, 470, 478, 532, 609; death of, 487  
 'Phags-pa script, 35, 36, 466–7, 605, 610  
 Philip IV, king of France, 465, 503  
 philosophy, 305  
 physicians, 450–1, 452  
*pi* 幣 (payment), 244, 254, 259, 296, 298, 302  
*pi-chi* 筆記, 660  
 Pi Shih-an �畢士安, 108  
*p'i* 匹, 189  
 Pien 沔 (K'ai-feng), 208; *see also* K'ai-feng  
 Pien-liang, 572  
 Pien River 沔河, 298  
 Pin-chou 邶州, 165  
*pin-k'o li* 賓客禮, 189  
 Ping 並 (Sung emperor) (r. 1278–9), 435  
*Ping chih* 兵志 (Monograph on the military), 590  
 Ping-chou, 178  
*Ping pu* 兵部, 589  
 P'ing 平, 227  
*p'ing-chang cheng-shih* 平章政事, 426, 495, 497  
*p'ing-chun k'u* 平準庫, 501  
 P'ing-chou, 61  
 P'ing-hsia Tanguts 平夏, 160, 161, 162–3, 169  
 P'ing-liang 平涼, 174  
 piracy, pirates, 430, 437, 575, 612  
 plague, 173, 585  
 playlets (*yüan-pen*), 309–10  
 playwrights, 467–8  
 Plum Moon Estate, 569  
*po-chi-lieh* 孝極烈 (appointed chieftains), 25, 266  
 Po Chü-i, 34  
 Po-chu-lu Ch'ung 李朮魯翀, 531  
 poetry, 642: in Chin (Jurchen) state, 306–7, 308, 310, 318  
 Po-hai 渤海 (Parhae), 3, 4, 5, 28, 31, 36, 48, 69, 77, 78, 98, 141, 181, 218, 223  
 agriculture, 94  
 autonomy of, 79  
 in Chin (Jurchen) government/state, 243, 268, 270, 271–2, 274, 275, 282, 286  
 and Hai-ling wang rule, 243  
 Liao (Khitan) conquest of, 53, 66, 67, 79, 100, 102, 103  
 in Liao (Khitan) federation, 12  
 marriage customs, 288  
 under Mongolian rule, 631  
 trade in, 72  
 troops in Liao (Khitan) army, 142, 150  
 unrest in, 103, 226  
 Po-hai rebellion (1029), 91, 103, 112–14, 116, 143–4  
*Po-kuan chih* 百官志, 588–2  
 Po-lieh han 孝烈漢, 240  
 political centers, shift in, 16–17  
 political doctrines: Chinese, 348; Mongolian state, 350  
 political factions, 45, 537; and assassination of Shidebala, 534; and enthronement of Toghön Temür, 567; Yüan government, 578; *see also* factionalism  
 political history, of Chin after 1142, 235–59  
 political institutions, 42, 489  
 political mobility, 611  
 political purge, by Ayurbarwada, 513, 514–15, 527, 533  
 politics, political situation, 9, 321 of Ayurbarwada, 513  
 borderlands of China, 218–19  
 Censorate in, 564  
 Chin (Jurchen) state, 249–50, 265–70

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

835

- civil service exams in, 564  
 of Khaishan, 507–8  
 of Khubilai, 428, 488–9  
 Liao (Khitan), 52, 116, 130, 132  
 Liao (Khitan) involvement in, in north China, 69–71, 72, 80–1  
 mid-Yüan, 490–560  
 military in, 6  
 Mongolian, 328–9, 500  
 regicide in, 537  
 in reign of Temür, 497, 501–2  
 in reign of Toghön Temür, 561  
 in reign of Tugh Temür, 549–53  
 and restoration movement, 545, 546–7  
 of Shidebala, 529–30  
 steppe, 323, 324–5, 337  
 steppe frontier in Yüan, 546–7  
 in Toghtō administration, 572–80  
 Turks in, 611  
 of Yesün Temür, 540  
 in Yüan succession struggles, 544  
 polities: consolodiation of, 11; hybrid, 362; role of non-Chinese, 14; sinicization of, 13  
 poll tax, 383  
 Po-lo 孛羅, 533  
 Polo, Maffeo, 463–4  
 Polo, Marco, 21, 216, 257, 301, 304, 323, 365, 450, 488; on Hang-chou, 659; Khubilai and, 463–4, 472  
 Polo, Nicolo, 463–4  
 popular arts: under Khubilai, 467–71; Yüan, 640–3  
 popular mobilization, 584  
 population, 37, 132  
   Chin (Jurchen), 278 *tab*  
   China, 36–7  
   cities, 657, 658  
   north China, 662  
   Yüan China, 618–22, 619 *map*, 664  
 population control, Chin (Jurchen) state, 277–9  
 population distribution  
   Chin/Jurchen, 279, 280 *map*  
   Yüan, 618, 619 *map*  
 population register(s), Mongols, 344  
 population shifts, north/south China, 657  
 porcelains, 470  
 pornography, 239  
 postal households (classification), 613  
 postal relay stations, 59, 297–8, 590  
 postal relay system (*jam*), 397, 445, 448, 450, 464, 469, 478; restrictions on use of, 399  
 Po-ta-sha 伯答沙 Baidasha, 549  
 pottery, 470  
 poverty: Chin (Jurchen) state, 275–6; slavery and, 287  
 power: China, 84–5; concentration of, in El Temür and Bayan, 547–9; Mongolian state, 367; north China, 74  
 power struggles: Chin court, 254; Chinese states, 72; government of Ayurbarwada, 524–7; Liao (Khitan), 61–3, 80, 133–5, 143, 146–7; northern China, 55  
 power system, triangular (Chin-Liao-Sung), 224  
 powers (elements), in dynasty emblems, 249–50  
 Po-yen 伯顏 (Bayan), 495  
 Po-yen-ch'an-erh 伯顏察兒 (Bayanchar), 537  
 P'o-ch'ou Tangut clan 破丑, 160  
 prefectures (T'ang) (*chou*), 8, 9  
 prefectures (chin) (*fu*, *chou*), 270  
 prefectures (Yüan) (*san-fu*, *fu*), 593, 595  
 Presidential Council (Shang-shu sheng) (Chin government), 268, 269  
 prime minister of the left (Yüan) (*tso ch'eng-hsiang*), 427, 475  
 prime minister of the right (Yüan) (*yu ch'eng-hsiang*), 427, 444, 478  
 prime ministers (*ch'eng-hsiang*) (China), 427  
 prime ministers (*po-chi-lieh*; *bogle*), Chin (Jurchen) system of, 266–7, 268

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

836

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

- prime ministers, Northern and Southern administration (*Pei-fu tsai-hsiang*, *Nan-fu tsai-hsiang*) (*Liao/Khitian*), 77
- primogeniture, 52, 190, 527
- Primordial Origin (*Hun-yüan*) sect (Taoism), 318
- primus inter pares*, 183
- prince (*wang*) (rank), 232, 359
- prince of Ch'in and Chin (title), 143
- princely administration (*wang-fu*), 22–3
- princely appanages (*khubi*), *see* appanages
- princely autonomy (Mongols), 379; *see also* imperial princes (Mongols)
- princely titles, granted by Khaishan, 508
- princes-merchants partnership (Mongols), 377
- printing, 40, 468
- printing offices, 296
- prisoners of war, enslaved, 614
- private academies (*shu-yüan*), 607
- private secretaries (*mu-yu*), 596
- privilege: social class and, 631; *see also* hereditary privilege
- Privy Council (*Shu-mi yüan*), 427, 452, 587, 590, 592, 602; and imperial guard, 601
- productivity, Sung China, 38
- professional affiliation, 29
- progenitor, common, Mongolian lineages, 324, 325
- property tax, 304
- protection (principle) (*yin*), 271, 272
- provinces (China), 427
- provincial administration, 3, 574
- provincial commanders, power of, broken under Sung, 84–5
- provincial governors, 74, 82
- provincial officials, 582; authority of, 574, 578, 583
- provincial organization, 79
- pseudofamilial relationships, model of, 222–3, 261
- Pu-chih-erh 不只兒, *see* Bujir
- Pu-hu-mu 不忽木, *see* Bukhumu
- Pu-hua T'ieh mu-erh 不花帖木兒, *see* Bukha Temür
- Pu-lien-chi-tai 不憲吉鮑, 524–150
- Pu-lu-han 不魯罕, *see* Bulukhan
- Pu-ta-shih-li 卜答失里, *see* Budashiri, Empress
- P'u-ch'a 蒲察, 248, 286–39
- P'u-hsien clan (Jurchen), 258
- P'u-hsien Wan-nu 蒲鮮萬奴, 257–9, 279
- P'u-ku Huai-en 僕固懷, 160
- p'u-li-yen* 蒲里衍, 274
- P'u-san 僕散, 256, 286–39
- P'u Shou-keng 蒲壽庚, 435
- public finance (Chin/Jurchen), 303–4
- public school instructors (*chiao-shou*), 607
- public/state schools, 606–7
- public works, of Khubilai, 473
- Pure Land school (Buddhism), 314
- purges, 25, 558; of Ayurbarwada, 513, 514–15, 527, 533; of conspirators in assassination of Shidebala, 536–7; Mongolian empire, 393–6; by Tugh Temür, 549
- P'yōng-yang 平壤, 100, 103, 111
- Qangli, 356, 596, 611
- Qarluq, 349–50, 611
- Qayaliq, 350, 395
- Qipchaq (khanate), and Tugh Temür reign, 550
- Qipchaq (people), 356, 502, 547, 548, 596, 611
- Qipchaq steppe, 321, 354, 368
- Qipchaq tribes, 321, 368, 370
- quota system, foreign trade, 298–9
- Rabban Markos, 464–5
- Rabban Sauma, 464–5
- race, and restoration movement, 547
- racial identity (Jurchen), 40
- raids, raiding: nomadic peoples, 442–3, 444–5; Tangut, 157, 159–60, 161, 162; Tibetan, 160–1; *see also* border raids

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

837

- ranks, titles, 78, 79; bodyguards, 23; granted to tribes/peoples, 8, 14, 22, 49, 50, 80, 88, 115, 338, 361, 508, 547, 548; inheritance of, 200; loan words, 13–14
- rationalization, 126
- realpolitik, 18–19
- rebellions
- China, 54, 574
  - ethnic minorities, 551–2
  - Liao (Khitan), 62, 112–14, 195, 199, 241, 243, 244, 293, 352
  - local, 41–2
  - Manchuria, 256 *map*, 487–8
  - against Mongolian rule, 476, 487–8, 480–1, 482, 663
  - monk-led, 316
  - north China, 387
  - Oyirad, 356
  - spread of, 576–8, 580, 581, 583, 585
  - rebirth (*tsai-sheng*) (ritual), 90–1, 115, 131, 137
  - recluses (*yin-shih*), 469
  - record checking (*shua-chüan*), 603
  - record keeping, 92–3; Mongolian state, 345
  - Red Coats 紅襍 (Hung ao), 256, 257, 259, 262, 359, 360
  - reforms
    - of Ayurbarwada, 522–3, 526
    - of Bayan, 569–71
    - Chin (Jurchen), 240, 244, 249
    - Hsia/Tangut, 181–2, 192, 200
    - of Khubilai, in north China, 408–9
    - Liao (Khitan), 88
    - Mongol empire, 399–400
    - opposed by aristocracy and officials, 534
    - of Shidebala, 530–2
    - Sung, 431
    - of Yeh-lü Ch'u-ts'ai, 375–8, 379–81
    - Yüan, 538, 560  - regencies (Khitan), 114–15, 116, 124; Hsi Hsia, 191, 193, 197; Mongols, 381, 382–4, 385, 386, 388–90
  - regent(s), 68, 149, 191, 528; Sung, 434, 435
  - regicide, 535–6, 537; at Ongghochatu, 545–7
  - regimes: centralizing, 10; non-Chinese, 1–3; in reunification of China, 17
  - regional administration (*hsing-t'ai*), 398, 589, 592; Liao (Khitan), 117; Mongolian empire, 397–8; *see also* Branch Secretariats
  - Regional Branches of the Grand Bureau of Agriculture (Hsing Ta ssu-nung ssu), 598
  - regional elites, 585
  - regional governments, 581, 594, 596; Hsia (Tangut), 183; Yüan, 591–2, 603
  - regional khanates, 395
  - regional khans, 408
  - regional states, 5, 6
  - regionalism, 21, 319, 378–9
  - regionalization: of Yüan rule, 528–4, 585
  - reign title(s) (*nien-hao*) (regnal titles), 15, 210, 573
  - A-pao-chi, 60, 62–3
  - Chin (Jurchen), xxvi *tab*, 221
  - Hsia (Tangut), xxvi *tab*, 181, 187, 198
  - Liao (Khitan), xxii *tab*, 73, 139, 144
  - Mongolian rulers, xxviii *tab*
  - Toghön Temür, 568
  - relief measures (natural disasters), 303, 552, 569; costs of, 585–6; decentralization of, 574; Chin government, 275–6, 303, 552; Hsia state, 199; Liao (Khitan), 132, 137
  - religion(s)
    - in Chin state, 313–19
    - Khubilai and, 445–6, 457–65, 473, 478–82, 488
    - Mongols and, 643
    - popular, 663
    - in reign of Yesün Temür, 539, 540–1
    - rulers and (Tangut, 204–5)
    - steppe tribes, 323
    - in Yüan state  - see also* specific religions, e.g., Buddhism

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

838

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

- religious communities, in Yüan China, 607, 643
- religious conflict, Mongolian empire, 420–1
- religious rituals, rebirth, 90–1, 115, 131, 137
- religious households (classification), 613
- religious poetry, 308–9
- religious sects, Mongols and, 635–6
- religious toleration, 414–15, 480
- remonstrance, right of, 564, 603
- requisition (*alba khubchiri*), 363–4
- resources (Mongol empire), central government access to, 399, 400
- restoration, restorationists, 544, 547, 550; justification of, 549; and Yüan relations with Mongolian world, 551; war of, 541–5
- retail trade, 295
- revanchism, 233, 235; Sung, 245–50, 298, 319, 429
- revenue collection: Mongolian state, 363–4, 395; *see also* taxation, taxes
- revenue commissioners (*cheng-shou k'o-shui shih*), 376
- revenues, Mongolian khaghan's primacy over, 374, 375–6, 379, 380–1
- rice, 95, 293, 577
- right prime minister, 268
- ritual exchanges, 109
- rituals
- Buddhist, 552, 609
  - Chinese, 20, 624
  - Confucian, 306
  - ethnic, 589–90
  - Khitan, 124, 126
  - Mongols, 471–2, 608–10
  - signification of, 240
  - see also* court ritual; religious rituals
- rLangs clan, 172
- road construction, Khubilai government, 448, 450
- road networks, Chin control of, 297
- road transport, costs of, 297
- roads, 95
- rockets, 430
- route(s) (*lu*), 270, 501, 593, 594–5
- royal clan (Khitan), power struggles, 128, 143
- royal family (Khitan): dissident members of, 81–2; marriage structure of, 87
- royal guards (*wei*), 79
- Rubruck, William of, 402, 462
- ruler-companion relationship, 22
- rulers: ceremonial embassies, 261; murdered, banished, 24; power and prestige of, 23–4; tribal election of: Jurchen, 221
- rules (*chen-chü t'ai-kang*), for censors, 531
- ruling clan/class
- Mongol, 558, 560
  - and plots against Tugh Temür, 551
  - Tangut, 181
- ruling elites, 585; Yüan state, 561
- ruling groups, non-Chinese, 1
- ruling system, Bayan's restoration of, 569
- rural life, 662; and messianic doctrines, 663; in Yüan times, 660–1
- Russia, 36, 43, 617; Batu's invasion of, 369 *map*
- Russian princes, Mongols' defeat of, 357
- Russian principalities, 366; census, 387, 401; Mongols and, 321, 368, 382; nobility in, 398; tax collection, 402
- Sa-la-te 薩刺德, 57
- Sa-la-ti 撒刺的 (father of Liao founder, posthumously canonized Te-tsui), 57
- Sa-li 撒里, 211
- Sa-skya sect, 461, 487
- Sa-tun 撒敦 (Sadun), 548
- sacral kinship, in Mongol ideology, 347–8
- sacrifice, 52, 157, 199, 397, 471–2, 541
- Sadun, *see* Sa-tun
- Sāhib dīvān, 497
- Saiyid Ajall Bayan, 499, 537
- Saiyid Ajall Shams al-Dīn, 460, 481, 485, 497

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

839

- Salindi, 394  
 Salji'ud (tribe), 246  
 salt, 57, 426, 575; Tangut and, 170, 178, 188, 196  
 salt licenses (*yen-yin*), sale of, 509, 511, 512, 523  
 salt monopoly, 96, 566, 569; Chin state, 294, 295, 304  
 salt-producing households (*tsao bu*) (classification), 656n52  
 Samarkand, 356  
 Samukha Baghatur, 361  
*San-ch'ü* 散曲, 513  
 San-feng, 372  
*san-fu* 散府, 593  
*san-fu fang* 三父房 (three patriarchal households), 62  
*san kung* 三公, 78  
 San-pao nu 三寶奴, 510, 514, 549  
*san sheng* 三省, 78, 588  
*san shib* 三師, 78  
 “San-shih nien lai Chung-kuo Meng-ku shih yen-chiu kai-k'uang”  
     三十年來中國蒙古史研究  
     概況, 614–61  
*san-ssu* 三司, 186  
 Sang-ko 桑哥, Sangha, 496, 613  
 Sangha, 478–82, 496, 497, 510, 526, 613;  
     administrative efficiency under, 499;  
     cadastral survey, 523  
*sang-luan* 奢亂, 308  
 Sanskrit, 35  
 Sartakh, 412  
 scholar-officials, 452, 454, 497, 512, 588  
     and civil service exams, 516, 517  
     in government of Ayurbarwada, 514–15, 526  
     in government of Shidebala, 529–30, 531  
     in government of Tugh Temur, 550  
     and restoration movement, 547  
     status of governance, 467  
     status of, 627–8, 631, 633, 635  
     and Yüan state, 534, 559, 560  
 scholarly households (*ju-bu*)  
     (classification), 613  
 Scholars of Pavilion of the Star of Literature (*K'wei-chang ko ta hsüeh-shib*), 548  
 scholarship: Chin (Jurchen) state, 304–13; Liao (Khitan) rulers, 130, 136–7  
 scholasticism, Buddhist, 315  
 School for the Sons of the State (Kuo-tzu-hsüeh), 497, 498  
 schools, schooling; government regulation of, 606–7; Hsia state, 198, 199, 201; Mongolian empire, 418  
 science, scientists, 451–2, 642  
 scribes, 397  
 scripts, 220; Mongols, 465–7; national, 31–2  
     Tangut, 32, 182, 214, 643–4; universal, 466–7, 472  
 scroll painting, 312  
 sculpture, 312  
*se-mu* 色目 (Western and Central Asians), 41, 214, 428, 514, 533, 554, 624  
 aristocracy/elites, 491–2, 520, 534, 560  
 aristocracy, and Yüan government, 559  
 financiers, 510, 530  
 and government of Tugh Temür, 550  
 as legally recognized class, 630–1  
 officials, 515, 516, 519  
 officials, civil service exams, 517  
 officials, power and privileges of, 526–7  
 scholars, 554–5  
 statesmen, 497  
 restoration movement, 547  
     in Yüan class system, 610  
 sea transport system, 566  
 seaborne trade, 430  
 seals (official business), 345, 399  
 second empress (*ti erb huang hou*), 580  
*Secret History of the Mongols*, 13, 15, 211, 238, 330, 332, 339, 343, 345, 367  
 Secretariat (Cheng-shin sheng; Chung-shu sheng) (Liao/Khitan), 78–9, 88

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

840

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

- Secretariat (Mongolian empire) (Chung-shu sheng), 495, 496, 500, 550  
 councillors to, 531  
 and expansion of bureaucracy, 508  
 in government of Ayubarwada, 515  
 and legal code, 518  
 Muslims in, 537  
 officials of, 543  
 power struggles and, 524  
 reduction in number of chiefs in, 512  
 in reign of Khaishan, 510  
 in reign of Temür, 498, 499  
 in reign of Yesün Temür, 538  
 and restoration movement, 545  
 Shidebala head of, 527  
 and succession struggle, 505  
 Secretarial council (Chung-shu sheng), 269  
 Secretariat of State Affairs (Shang-shu sheng), 361, 588  
 sectarian movements, 41–2; Buddhist, 315–16  
 sects: Buddhist, 315–16; Taoist, 317  
 sedentary peoples/states, 11, 12, 37, 652–3;  
     effect of reforms on, 399–400;  
     governance of, 73–4, 360, 373;  
     horses taken from 453; influence on  
     Mongols, 646–7; Khubilai and,  
     418–19, 421, 424, 446, 448; legal  
     code for, 453–4; Liao (Khitan)  
     administration of, 63–4, 66, 67;  
     under Mongolian rule, 374, 379,  
     390, 398, 631; and raids by nomads,  
     443; tax collection, 403  
 Selenga River, 138, 323, 324  
 Seljuqs of Rum, 370, 383  
 Semirechie, 349  
 Senggüm, 340–1  
 Senggür River, 337  
 serfdom, 661  
 sericulture, 293, 447, 598  
 service obligations: rural households,  
     662–3; *see also* corvée obligations/  
     service
- service reform: pilot projects, 581  
 Se-se-li 瑟瑟禮 (rain ceremony), 125  
*Ses bya rab-gaal* (What one should know)  
     ('Phags-pa lama), 459  
 Sewinck Khaya, 513, 529  
 Sha-chou 沙州, 121, 162, 176, 179,  
     211  
 Sha-chou Kuei-i Chün, 162  
 Sha-chou Pei-t'ing khaghanate, 177  
 Sha-chou Uighurs, 177  
 Sha-t'o 沙院, 6, 10, 55, 58, 61, 64, 74, 163,  
     164, 167  
 Sha-t'o dynasty, 65  
 Sha-t'o rule, 6  
 Sha-t'o Turks, 6, 55, 70, 85  
 shamanism, shamans, 323, 342, 397, 457,  
     471–2, 609, 643  
*shan-chang* 山長, 607  
 Shan-chou 鄖州, 196  
 Shan-hai kuan, 61, 64, 135  
 Shan-hsi 陝西 (province), 544, 551, 592;  
     Branch Censorate at, 603  
 Shan-yüan 潛淵, 107; treaty of, 18,  
     108–10, 144, 177  
 Shang Ch'i 商琦, 513  
 Shang ching 上京 (Chin Supreme Capital),  
     63  
*Shang shu* 尚書 (Book of history), 519  
 Shang Yeh 尚野, 513  
*Shang-shu ling* 尚書令, 177, 186, 200  
*Shang-shu sheng* 尚書省, 78, 268, 269, 510,  
     588  
 Shang-tu 上都, 470, 472, 473, 509  
     coup in, 543–4, 545, 549, 550, 552  
     destruction of, 562  
     emperors' yearly trips to, 562  
     mosques in, 532, 540  
     purge in, 536  
     regent of, 528  
     summer capital, 472, 495–6, 561–2,  
         609  
 Toghön Temür installed as emperor,  
     561, 562  
     *see also* K'ai-p'ing

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

841

- Shansi 山西, 6, 9, 10, 44, 55, 84, 85, 163, 164, 178, 261, 372  
 agriculture, 294  
 cattle breeding in, 293  
 Chin armies occupying, 227  
 Khitan invasion of, 47  
 loyalists in, 544  
 Mongol attack on, 207, 252, 259, 351, 358, 360  
 population, 621  
 raids on, 159  
 Turks in, 158
- Shantung 山東, 167, 261, 262, 281, 359, 360, 372, 424, 426, 623  
 Chin population in, 279  
 foreign trade, 298  
 households registered in, 621 *tab*  
 land tenure in, 291  
 Mongol military recruitment in, 403  
 Mongolian attacks on, 252, 351, 358  
 natural disasters, 247  
 population, 36  
 rebellions in, 254–7, 256 *map*, 259  
 salt production, 295  
 water transport, 297
- Shao-fu chang [fang]* 少父帳 [房], 129
- Shao-hsing prefecture 紹興, 230, 581
- she* 社, see agricultural communities (*she*)
- she-chang* 社長, 447
- sheep, Mongols' uses of, 326, 327, 330
- Shen-nung, 51–2
- Shen-tsung 神宗 (Wei-ming Tsun-hsu; Hsia emperor) (r. 1211–23), 208, 210
- sheng* 升 (liter), 303
- sheng* 省 (province), 267–8
- Sheng Nü-chih 生女直, 141
- Sheng-tsung 聖宗 (Liao emperor; Lung-hsü) (r. 982–1031), 87, 89, 104, 127  
 abdicated, 210  
 accession, 88, 97  
 death of, 92, 94, 114
- mausoleum, 115  
 reign of, 87, 89–90, 93, 94–5, 98–9, 112, 116, 121  
 tax system, 96  
 wars, 117, 120, 121
- Shensi 延安, 9, 248, 261, 364, 372, 405  
 charge of corruption in, 409  
 claimed by Hsia (Tangut), 201  
 conquered by Chin (Jurchen), 180, 233  
 illegal trafficking at border of, 205  
 Mongol attack on, 252, 263, 359–60  
 in Mongolian conquest, 208, 210  
 population, 621
- Shiba, Yoshinobu 斯波義信, 658
- Shidebala khaghan 碩德八刺 (Yüan emperor) (r. 1320–3; canonized Ying-tsung), 527–38, 540, 542  
 assassination of, 533, 535–6, 543, 559  
 and coup d'état at Nan-p'o, 532–4  
 court of, 546  
 heir apparent, 522  
 imperial princes and, 534  
 princes enfeoffed by, 539  
 reform of Chih-chih era, 530–2  
 reign of, 524, 537, 538, 559, 560  
 self-assertion, 529–30  
 successor to, 518, 535  
 and Temüder's reign of terror, 528
- Shigi Khutukhu, 344, 345, 378
- shib* 石 (hundredweight), 292, 302, 303, 509, 511, 512, 552
- Shih (Sung emperor) (r. 1276–7; canonized as Tuan-tsung), 434–5
- Shih-chi* (Records of the grand historian), 33, 130, 420
- Shih Ching-t'ang 石敬瑭, 69–72, 96
- Shib-cheng fu* 侍正府, 604
- shib-chiang hsüeh-shih* 侍講學士, 528
- Shih Ch'u 史樞, 426
- Shih Ch'ung-kuei 石重貴, 72–3
- Shih Fang 室昉, 88, 93
- shib-hsüan* 世選, 78, 92
- Shih-lin-ta-li 失憐答里 (Shirindari), 504
- Shib lin kuang chi* 事林廣記, 599–30

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

842

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

- Shih-lu 釋魯, 57  
*shih-lu* 實錄 (veritable record), 93, 129, 130  
 Shih-mo I-sun 石抹宜孫, 583, 584  
 Shih-mo Ming-an 石抹明安, 361  
*Shih-p'o ti-chü ssu* 市舶提舉司, 523  
*Shih-po-ssu* 市舶司, 599, 600  
 Shih T'ien-tse 史天澤, 426, 453  
*Shih-tsü* 世祖, 587  
 Shih-tsü (Chin ancestor), *see* Han-p'u  
 Shih-tsü, *see* Khubilai (Yüan emperor) (r. 1260–94)  
 Shih-tsung (Yeh-lu Yüan; Khitan name Wu-yü, Liao emperor) (r. 947–51; canonized Shih-tsung), 75–6, 82, 85  
 reign of, 76–8, 80–1, 84  
 succession of, 75–6  
 Shih-tsung 世宗 (Wu-lu; Wan-yen; Chin emperor) (r. 1161–89), 40, 201–2, 204–5, 243, 269, 277, 283, 388, 296, 301, 310, 312, 317  
 and Buddhism, 313  
 on Chinese population, 281–2  
 economic expansion under, 300  
 and examination system, 272  
 golden age of, 243–5  
 and imperial clan, 284  
 land allocation under, 292  
 and legal code, 289  
 nativism of, 250, 281  
 peace in reign of, 306  
 relief measures by, 275–6  
 slaveholding, 287  
 Shih-t'u-erh 失秀兒 (Shiktür), 533  
 Shih-wei 失韋, 12, 44, 45, 49, 329; Black Cart tribe, 58; federation, 218; Liao (Khitan) and, 53, 57, 59, 60; origins of, 46  
 Shih Wei-liang 史惟良, 538  
 Shih Yüan 史愿, 140–212  
 Shiktür 失秀兒, 533  
 Shira muren, 63  
 Shiremün, 384, 385, 391, 392, 393, 524  
 Shirindari 失憐答里, 504  
 Shou-an Mountain 壽安, 532  
 Shou-chou 壽州, 383  
*shou chün* 瘦軍, 148  
 Shou-kuo (reign title), 221  
 Shou shih li 授時曆 (calendar), 451  
 Shu 蜀 (state), 65, 83, 163  
*Shu-ching* (Book of documents), 34, 459  
 Shu (Szechuan) province, 244  
*shu* 書 (writing), 285–37  
*shu-mi shih* 樞密使, 89, 90  
*Shu-mi yüan* 樞密院, 78, 186, 269, 427, 452, 495, 567, 587, 590, 592, 601, 602, 651  
 Shu Nü-chih 熟女直, 141  
*shu-yüan* 書院, 606–46, 607  
*shua-chüan* 刷卷, 603  
 Shun Nü-chih 順女直, 141  
 Shun-ti 順帝, *see* Toghön Temür (Yüan emperor) (r. 1333–68)  
 Shuo-fang 朔方, 159, 160; prince of, 164  
*Shuo-fang wang* 朔方王, 164  
 Shuo-lo 涣羅, *see* Ch'o-lo  
 Shih-te-pa-la 碩德八刺, *see* Shidebala  
 Siberia, 328, 348  
 siege warfare (Mongols), 363, 431  
 silk, as currency, 96  
 silk production, 293, 447  
 Silla (Korean kingdom), 2, 4, 5, 100, 102  
 silver, 18, 296, 300–1, 500–1  
 “silver notes of the Chih-ta era” (*Chih-ta yin ch'ao*), 511  
 sinification/sinicization, 13, 644–5  
 of A-pao-chi, 67  
 Chin (Jurchen) political structure, 240, 244–5, 250, 266, 282, 284–5, 289–90  
 court of Tugh Temür, 553–6  
 of government bureaucracy, 519  
 of Khubilai, 488–9  
 of law, 116  
 of Liao (Khitan) state/empire, 93–4, 125–6  
 of Mongols, 416  
 of state structure, 26  
 of Uighurs, 611  
 of Yüan, 517, 534, 559, 560

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

843

- Sinkiang 新疆, 4, 5, 630; *see also* Turkestan
- Sino-foreign relations, 16
- Sino-Tangut relations, 166
- sinocentrism, 21
- Sīstān, 404
- Six Boards, 269
- Six Divisions, 77
- Six Dynasties, 30, 33
- Sixteen Prefectures, 70, 76–7, 78, 82, 86, 94, 104, 148, 149, 226
- skilled craftsmen, in Yüan social order, 648, 653–6
- slave status, hereditary, 287
- slavery, slaves, 23, 38, 116, 592  
captured peoples as, 661  
in Chin (Jurchen) social structure, 276, 278, 284, 286–8, 290, 293  
of Mongols, 378, 379  
redemption of, 287–8, 289  
self-sale, 287, 288  
temple, 287  
in Yüan social structure, 613–14
- slaves (bond servants) (*bo'ol*), Mongolian tribes, 326
- smuggling, 298
- snowfall, 132–3
- Sō Hūi, 103
- social change (China), 657, 658
- social classes, 661; Chin state, 283–91; Yüan rule, 627–35, 648–56
- social customs (Mongolian), 362
- social dislocation, caused by Mongolian campaigns against Chin, 362–3
- social groups, and government bureaucracy (Chin), 271
- social history (China), 616–17, 618–64
- social history (Yüan), 617, 628, 657–61; meaning of Yüan drama in, 640–3
- social integration, twelfth century, 321
- social mobility, in Sung dynastic era, 627
- social order: Mongolian tribes, 324–6; of nomadic societies, 628; Yüan state, 631; *see also* social structure
- social policies: of Khubilai, 445–54; Mongolian empire, 383–4
- social-psychological factors, in Chinese society under Mongol rule, 622–7
- social relations, in Yüan rule in China, 569
- social structure: China, 42, 294, 643; Chin (Jurchen), 219, 277–9, 291; ethnically based, 491–2; Mongols, 330–3, 491–2
- social system: reign of Temür, 497; Yüan, 560, 608–15
- society (Chinese): dynasties of conquest and, 42; effect of foreign domination on, 40, 41; personal subordination in, 38
- sociopolitical system: Mongolian state, 361; Tangut, 191; Tibetan, 191
- Sodnam (brother of Tegshi), 533
- Sodnam (son of Temüder), 533
- Sodu 唆都, 435, 485
- Sogdians, 9, 156, 159, 164–5
- So-tu 唆都 Sodu, 435, 485
- Sō Hūi 徐熙, 103
- Sōngjong 成宗, 103, 104
- Soochow, 583
- Sorghaghtani Beki 喬魯帖尼, 206, 389, 390–1, 392, 393, 395, 397, 611; and administration, 398; sons of, 414–15
- Sorkhan Shira, 335
- sororate, 288
- Sou-nan 瑣南
- Sou-nan-tsang-pu 瑣南藏人 (Bsod-nams btsang-pa), 541
- south China (southern China) (Manzi), 21  
economic importance of, 612–13  
economic recovery of, 475–6  
foreign domination of, 37  
Mongolian attack on, 41, 403–4, 405–7, 411, 417, 420, 421, 424, 449  
social change in, 658  
Yüan administration of, 565–6
- Southeast Asia, 72, 429; Mongol campaigns in, 407, 484–7, 486 *map*

- Southern Administration (Liao/Khitian), 25, 38, 63–4, 77, 79–80, 89, 126  
 Southern Capital (Chin/Jurchen), 240, 241, 254, 270, 279, 300–1  
 Southern Capital (Liao/Khitian), 16, 39, 69, 70, 75, 79, 82, 98, 99, 124, 125, 147, 148, 151, 226  
   attack on, 150  
   Chung-yüan viceroy of, 116  
   examination system in, 92  
   Shih Fang at, 88  
   siege of, 86  
   T'ang legal code in, 94  
   viceroy, 89, 128, 129, 143  
 Southern Capital circuit (Liao/Khitian), 95, 96, 113, 117, 131, 146, 147, 149  
 southern chancellor (Liao/Khitian), 129  
 southern Chinese (*nan jen*), 428, 631, 632; in Yüan class system, 610  
 southern Commission for Military Affairs (Ch'i-tan Nan shu-me yüan) (Liao/Khitian), 77  
 southern commissioner for military affairs, 90, 127  
 “Southern Court,” 109, 124  
 Southern Han (state), 85  
 Southern Region (Nan-mien), 77–8, 79–80  
 Southern Sung, 2, 40, 293, 610, 612, 658, amalgamation into Mongolian Empire, 473–6  
   arts, 311, 312  
   capital, 17, 657  
   civilization, 304–5  
   economic integration of, into Mongolian Empire, 475–6  
   literature, 307  
   Mongolian campaign against/ conquest of, 407, 409–11, 413, 416, 417, 422–3, 424, 432 *map*, 442, 444, 445, 482, 488, 618–20, 623, 631, 637, 649, 650, 651, 661  
   newly adhered armies (*bsin-fu chün*), 601  
     population, 621  
     *see also* Sung  
 Southern T'ang, 71–2, 80–1, 83, 85  
 sovereignty, Mongolian conception of, 347–8  
 special representatives (*darughachi*), 427  
 specialists identified by census, 403  
*ssu* 寺, 79  
 Ssu 泗, 298, 299  
 Ssu-chien, 163  
 Ssu-chou, 234, 248  
 Ssu-ch'uan (province), 544  
*Ssu k'u ch'üan shu* 四庫全書, 597–25  
 Ssu-ma Ch'ien, 420  
 Ssu-ma Kuang 司馬光, 59–10, 307, 519  
 Ssu-ma P'u 司馬樸, 307–59  
*Ssu-nung-ssu* 司農司, 598  
*Ssu-pu ts'ung-k'an* 四部叢刊, 595–22, 597–26  
*Ssu-t'ien chien* 司天監, 607  
 Ssu-to-tu 嘘鐸督, 173, 175, 176  
 Stabilization Bureaus (P'ing-chun k'u), 500–1  
 state (*kuo*), 15  
 state farm systems, 577  
 state formation: Mongols, 332–3; steppe tribes, 328–9, 331  
 state monopolies, 474; commodities, 294–6; copper, 299–300; on foreign trade, 298–9, 523; revenue, 303; salt, 96, 294, 295, 304, 566, 569  
 state script (*kuo tzu*), 466  
 statecraft, 34, 642  
 states: mutual recognition of, through treaties, 19; plurality of, 16–18  
 states of conquest, legal systems, 27–9  
 statesmen (Khitian), traditional groups of, 78  
 steppe, vs. sedentary parts of empire, 558  
 steppe frontier, passing of, 546–7  
 steppe regions, 235; Mongol power in, 238  
 steppe tradition, 560, 609, 616  
 steppe tribes  
   distribution of, 321–4, 322 *map*

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

845

- social order, 324–6  
 state formation, 328–9, 331  
 unification of, 321, 338–42, 349  
 steppe wars, 542, 543, 548, 568  
 stone inscriptions (*t'i ming chi*), 563  
 Su 蘇, 51  
 Su Ch'e 蘇轍, 39, 97, 137–208  
*Su-cheng lien-fang ssu* 蘇政廉訪司, 594, 603  
 Su-chih 蘇質 (also written Hsien-chih 鮮質), 51  
 Su-chou 蘇州, 7, 162, 211, 365, 464  
 Su-ko-pa-la 速哥八刺 (Sugabala), 533  
 Su T'ien-chüeh 蘇天爵, 554  
 Su Tung-p'o 蘇東坡, 307  
*su-wei* 宿衛, 590, 601  
 sub-elite classes, 648–56  
 Sübëtei 速不台 (Mongolian general), 211, 263, 264, 321, 392, 407; and attack on Qipchaq, 368; and destruction of Chin, 372; raid into Eurasia, 357  
 sublineages (Mongolian), 324, 326, 327, 333, 336  
 subprefecture(s) (*chou*), 593, 594, 595  
 subsidies, annual, 70, 122, 144  
 subsistence, crisis of, 132  
 suburban offerings (*chiao-ssu*) to Heaven, 553  
 succession, 24; Chin (Jurchen), 239, 250; conflict between Chinese and tribal styles of, 75–6; Hsia (Tanguts), 164, 167, 179, 189–91, 195  
 succession (Liao/Khitan), 52, 57, 61–3, 68–75, 76, 81, 84, 124–5, 137, 139, 147; predynastic, 48  
 succession (Mongol/Yüan), 251, 325, 332, 382–3, 384–6, 389–93, 396, 492–3, 505, 513, 527, 535; to Chinggis khan, 365–8; failure of arrangements for, 55–67; Khubilai's break with custom in designation, 458, 459, 488  
 succession struggles (Mongolian/Yüan), 411–13, 421–4, 445, 454, 493, 494–6, 505–7, 541–5, 546–7, 549, 558, 559–60; imperial grants in, 500  
 Sugabala, 533  
*sui* 歲, 565  
 Sui 隋, 10, 17, 47, 155, 157, 163, 289, 591  
 Sui-ch'eng 遂城, 105, 107  
 Sui-chou prefecture 綏州, 166, 168, 192, 193  
 Sui period, 4, 46, 155, 157  
 Sui prefecture, 163  
*Sui shu*, 46  
 Sui-te market 綏德, 205  
*Sui-tz'u* 歲賜, 500, 608  
 Sui Wen-ti, 29  
 sumptuary regulations, 275–6, 589  
 Sun Buddha Vairocana, 315  
*Sun-tzu ping-fa* (Master Sun's art of war), 34  
 Sung 宋, 2, 6, 39, 40, 176, 256, 604 arts, 313  
 and balance of power in East Asia, 206  
 border demarcation crisis with Liao (Khitan), 137  
 borker markets with Chin (Jurchen), 298  
 and border peace, 178  
 Buddhism, 314–15  
 bureaucracy, 186  
 capitals, 17, 227, 229, 233  
 Chin (Jurchen) campaign against, 358–9, 360  
 claim of legitimate rulership, 250  
 and collapse of Liao (Khitan) empire, 149–50  
 court beatings, 29–30  
 currency, 97, 300, 301  
 diplomatic intercourse, 19, 282  
 embassy to (Liao Khitan), 124  
 fire element of, 320  
 fiscal policy, 302  
 government, 26  
 Hsia (Tangut) and, 121, 140  
 influence on Chin (Jurchen) government, 265–70  
 Liao (Khitan) relations with, 18, 83–7, 98, 99, 121–2, 129, 223

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

846

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

- Liao (Khitan) warfare with, 86, 89, 90, 91, 98, 99–100, 104–8, 106 *fig.*, 148–9  
 legal code, 29, 289, 290  
 Li Ch'üan and, 257  
 Maritime Trade Bureau, 599  
 Mongolian attack on, 388, 400, 403, 405–7, 421, 422, 424, 426  
 Mongol conquest of Southern Sung, 429–36, 432 *map*  
 officials, 271  
 payments to Chin (Jurchen), 296  
 payments to Liao (Khitan), 63  
 political and economic difficulties of, 430–1  
 and power and stability in East Asia, 203  
 prosperity of, 430  
 relations with Chin (Jurchen), 18, 141, 219, 224–35, 240, 247–8, 250, 259, 264–5  
 revanchism, 245–50  
 reunification of China under, 11  
 Taoism under, 316–17  
 trade with Chin (Jurchen), 298, 299  
 treaty of 1141, 19  
 treaty partners of, 20  
 treaty with Liao (Khitan), 120, 177, 222  
 vassal status to Chin (Jurchen), 234, 235  
 wars of, 12–13, 37  
 wars with Chin (Jurchen), 201, 227–32, 240–4, 245–50, 259, 268, 275, 298, 316  
 and Yüan bureaucracy, 587  
*see also* Southern Sung  
 Sung armies, absorbed into Mongolia, 650  
 Sung China, 42, 239; family system, 288; Jurchen script in, 283; natural disasters, 132; productivity, 38  
 Sung-chou 松州 prefectural government-general (*tu-tu fū*), 158, 159  
 Sung court, 115, 156, 167, 196, 208  
 cilents, of, 179–80  
 Jurchens at, 218  
 and Mongol attacks, 433  
 peace negotiations with Mongols, 372  
 relations with Hsia (Tangut), 167, 168–73, 177–8, 193–6, 197, 198, 181, 182, 186, 187–9, 190, 192, 193–6, 197, 198  
 revanchism, 429  
 tributary relations, 17, 18  
 Tsung-ko relations with, 174–5  
 Sung dynasty, 1, 14, 155, 268, 269, 350, 410, 411, 468, 623, 632, 633  
 art, 468, 469  
*chin-shih* degrees, 638, 639  
 civil service exams, 516  
 conquest of, 36  
 conscription, 648, 649  
 diplomacy, 20–1  
 documents of, 555  
 end of, 624  
 fall of, 435–6  
 founding of, 84  
 legal code, 453  
 model of government developed under, 270, 430  
 and Mongolian rule, 633, 634  
 official history of, 573  
 princely administration, 23  
 ruling circles, 230  
 ruling family, 241  
 and social mobility, 627  
 Sung Hsiao-tsung, abdication of, 205  
*Sung hsing t'ung* (Encyclopedia of Sung penal law), 289  
 Sung Hui-tsung, 39, 553  
 Sung Jen-tsung, 187, 188  
 Sung Kao-tsung, 241  
 Sung loyalists, 434–5  
 Sung-mo 松漠, 48, 51  
 Sung-p'an 松潘, 172  
 Sung Pen 宋本, 554  
 Sung period, scholar-officials in, 628  
 Sung Pu, 98

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

847

- Sung royal family: desecration of corpses of, 480; tombs of, plundered, 479
- Sung shih* 宋史 chronology, 200, 241
- Sung T'ai-tsü, *see* T'ai-tsü (Sung emperor) (r. 1060–76)
- Sung T'ai-tsung, *see* T'ai-tsung (Sung emperor) (r. 1076–1097)
- Sungari River, 140, 141, 142, 144
- Sungari River region, 217
- Sungari Valley, 102
- Superintendency of Paper Money (Chiao-ch'ao t'i chü-ssu), 402
- supernumeraries; in government of Khaishan, 508, 509, 510; number of, 498, 500, 522
- supernumerary posts, 531, 564
- Supervising Money Bureau (Ch'üan-fu ssu), 600
- supervisor of Buddhist teachings in south China (Chiang-nan tsung-she chang shih-chiao), 479
- Supreme Capital (Chin/Jurchen), 221, 240, 245, 258, 268, 279
- Supreme Capital (Liao/Khitian), 63, 70, 73, 74, 75, 78, 79, 83, 88, 89, 98, 114, 126, 134, 143, 146
- Supreme Capital (Po-hai), 102
- Supreme Capital circuit (Liao/Khitian), 144
- Supreme Control Commission (Tsung-chih yüan), 461
- surname exogamy (principle), 132
- surnames: Chinese-style, 132; Khitan, 56–7
- Surveillance Bureaus (Su-cheng Lien-fang ssu), Yüan, 594
- Surveillance Offices, 603
- Ssu Prefecture, 298, 299
- sutras, 314, 315, 317  
translation of, into Tangut, 196
- syncretism, 315, 317–18
- Syr Darya, 354, 356
- Syria, 405
- Szechwan 四川, 4, 65, 83, 85, 155, 214, 248, 372, 544
- Mongol attack on/occupation of, 410, 411, 421
- Sung–Mongol battle in, 431
- Ta-an ko 大安閣, 419
- Ta chao-hsiao temple, 532
- Ta-chen 大真 (state), 258
- ta ch'eng-hsiang* 大丞相, 78
- Ta-chi 答己, 506
- Ta Ch'i 大齊, 230, 232, 268
- Ta Ch'i-tan kuo 大契丹國, 109
- Ta-Ch'u 大楚 (state) ("Great Ch'u"), 229–30
- Ta Han t'ai-hsüeh 大漢太學 (Superior school of Chinese learning), 199
- Ta-ho clan 大賀, *see* Li (Ta-ho) clan
- Ta Hsi dynasty 大奚, 150
- Ta Hsia 大夏 (state), 187, 121
- ta-hsüeh-shih* 大學士
- Ta-hsüeh yen-i* 大學衍義 (Expounded meaning of the Great Learning), 34, 459, 519
- Ta-la-ma-pa-la 答剌麻八刺, 502, 505
- Ta-li 大里, 405–7, 406 *map*, 410, 417–18, 433
- Ta-li-ssu* 大理寺, 591
- Ta-lin-ta-li 答隣答里, 548
- ta-lu-hua-ch'ib* 達魯花赤, 521
- ta-ma hsüeb-sha-li* (commander of Khitan, Khaghan's personal guard), 57
- Ta-ming 大名, 230, 358, 387, 592
- Ta-shib-man* 答失蠻, 540
- Ta Liao kuo 大遼國, 109
- Ta ssu-nung* 大司農, 533
- Ta ssu-nung ssu* 大司農司, 597, 598, 599, 601
- Ta-tan 鬪靼、達旦, 138
- Ta-ting 大定, regnal period 1161–89 of Chin emperor Shih-tsung, 290, 298, 299
- Ta tsung-cheng fu* 大宗正府, 591
- Ta-tu 大都 (Peking), 26, 37, 454–7, 456  
*map*, 458, 472, 473, 561–2, 580, 582, 583, 608, 657
- Ayurwarbada storming palace in, 506

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

848

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

- Buddhist temples in, 470, 509, 580  
 building of, 642  
 capital removed to, 605  
 Censorate in, 603  
 coup d'état in, 541–2, 543, 544, 545  
 court at, 608–10  
 descriptions of, 562, 659  
 grain for, 476–8, 566  
 link between Yangtze region and, 613  
 purge in, 536  
 slave markets in, 614  
 Taoist temple in, 481  
 temple to Confucius in, 498  
 Toghön Temür's reign in, 561  
 tribute missions to, 504
- Ta tu-tu fu* 大都督府, 548
- Ta-t'ung 大同, 7, 10, 58, 69, 70, 73, 79, 98, 117, 539, 540
- Ta-t'ung River 大通, 155
- Ta Yen-lin 大延琳, 113
- Ta Yüan, dynastic name chosen by Khubilai, 458
- Ta Yüan 大元 (state), 144
- Ta Yüan kuan chih tsa chi* 大元官制雜記, 598–29
- Ta Yüan sheng cheng kuo ch'ao tien chang* 大元聖政國朝典章, 589–4
- Ta Yüan t'ung chih 大元通制 (*Comprehensive institutions of the Great Yüan*), 34, 518–19; revised, 531
- Ta Yüan T'ung-pao* 大元通寶 (currency), 511
- t'a-ma hsüeh-sha-li* 捷馬犖沙里, 57
- T'a-shih T'ieh-mu-erh 塔失帖木兒 (*Tas Temür*), 537
- T'a-ssu Pu-hua 塔思不花 (*Tas Bukha*), 512
- T'a-t'a T'ung-a 塔塔統阿, 345
- T'aejo 太祖, 100
- table manners (Mongols), 609
- taboo names, 609
- taboos, 109, 608
- Taghachar, 410
- Tai Bukha, 555
- Tai-chou, 178
- T'ai-hang range, 86
- t'ai-fu* 太傅, 548
- T'ai-ho 泰和, 289, 290, 291
- T'ai ho code 泰和律 (*T'ai ho lü*), 28, 249; 289–90, 379, 518; abrogation of, 291
- T'ai-ho Range 大和嶺, 357
- T'ai-i 太一, 318
- T'ai-i yüan* 太醫院, 607
- T'ai-miao* 太廟, 457, 458, 539
- t'ai-pao* 太保, 548
- T'ai-p'ing 太平 (coinage), 97
- T'ai ping, prince of, 547
- T'ai-ping ts'e* 太平策 (*Treatises for the great peace*), 498
- T'ai Pu-hua 泰不華 (*Tai Bukha*), 555
- T'ai-shan (sacred mountain), 462
- t'ai-shih* 太師
- T'ai-shih yüan* 太史院, 607
- T'ai-ting 泰定 *see* Yesün Temür (*Yüan Emperor T'ai-ting*) (r. 1323–8)
- T'ai-tsu 太祖 (*Chao K'uang-yin*; Sung emperor) (r. 960–76), 84–6, 103
- T'ai-tsu 太祖 (*Temüjin*, Chinggis khan; Mongolian ruler and Yüan ancestor), *see* Temüjin
- T'ai-tsung 太宗 (*Li Shih-min*; *T'ang* emperor) (r. 626–49), 33, 47, 198, 519–20
- T'ai-tsung 太宗 (*Chao K'uang-i*; Sung emperor) (r. 976–97), 85–6, 99, 100
- T'ai-tsung 太宗 (*Te-kuang*; Liao emperor) (r. 927–47), 68–75, 81, 88, 91, 96–7, 108, 137
- T'ai-tsung 太宗 (*Wu-ch'i-mai*; Chin emperor) (r. 1123–38), 224, 226–7, 230, 232, 235; descendants of, 239
- T'ai-tsung 太宗 (*Ögödei*; Mongolian khaghan and emperor) (r. 1229–41), *see* Ögödei
- T'ai-tzu Mountains 太子山, 127
- t'ai-tzu t'ai-shih* 太子太師, 525
- t'ai-wei* 太尉, 548

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

849

- T'ai-yüan 太原, 7, 55, 70, 72, 74, 81, 86, 167, 178, 259, 358, 379
- T'ai-yüan Prefecture, 227
- tammachi* 探馬赤 Mongolian military households, 601, 649, 652–45
- T'an 郊, Prince, 571
- T'an-ma-ch'ib chün* 探馬赤軍, 601
- T'an-yüan, see Shan-yüan 潛淵
- T'ang 唐, 2, 3, 5, 10, 37, 40, 157, 159, 218, 249, 267–9, 391, 460, 591, 604, 630, 643  
capital of, 623  
codified law, 27–8, 93, 94  
coinage, 97  
collapse of, 53, 54, 56, 60, 83  
court beatings, 29  
documents of dynasty, 555  
end of dynasty, 1, 11, 161–3, 164  
frontier, 7–10  
land allocation, 292  
legal precedents of, 289, 290  
literature, 307  
philosophy, 305  
restoration of, 65  
rise of, 47  
and rule of Liao (Khitan), 47–51, 52  
statecraft, 33  
Tangut submission to, 158–61  
tax system, 96  
tributary relations, 14  
universal emperors of, 16  
and Yüan bureaucracy, 587
- T'ang art, 311, 312, 313
- Tang-ch'ang 宕昌, 157
- T'ang-ch'i-shih 唐其勢
- T'ang Ch'ing, 263
- T'ang dynastic histories, 329
- T'ang government, 26, 588  
and defense of frontier, 55–6  
Department of State Affairs  
(*Shang-shu sheng*), 78  
disintegration of, 70  
as model, 42, 63, 78, 79, 270  
princely administration, 23
- Tang-hsiang 黨項 Ch'iang, 155–6, 157,  
*see also* Tanguts
- T'ang emperor Hsüan-tsung, 555
- T'ang-ku-t'e 唐古特 (忒), *see* Tangut
- T'ang-kua 唐括, 286
- T'ang lü shu i (T'ang code with commentary), 289
- T'ang Ming-tsung (r. 926–33), 165
- T'ang Prefecture, 234, 248
- T'ang emperor Su-tsung, 147–8
- T'ang emperor T'ai-tsung 唐太宗, 198, 519, 520
- T'ang-wu 唐兀, *see* Tangut
- Tangghud, *see* Tanguts
- Tangkish, 548
- Tangut (Tang-hsiang 黨項), 7
- Tangut clans, 157, 160, 166, 167, 168, 169, 193, 199; contractual compromise with throne, 197; maternal, 191
- Tangut court: coup, 195; historiographers to, 204; and war with Chin, 210
- Tangut culture, Buddhism in, 154–5
- Tangut empire, 154–5; impulse to split up, 203
- Tangut language, 20, 154, 156, 397; translations into, 33, 34, 35, 155, 182, 196, 204
- Tangut royal house: instability of, 206; Mongols' treatment of, 213–34
- Tangut script, 32, 182, 214, 643–4
- Tangut society, 157, pastoral bases of, 178
- Tangut state/regime, 2, 10, 32, 166;  
Mongols' destruction of, 617; *see also* Hsi Hsia Tangut tribes, 167, 168; divisions in, 169, 170; Liao (Khitan) relations with, 69, 99, 100, 105; raids, 165; rebellion, 122–3
- Tanguts, 1, 7, 9, 66, 89, 110, 198, 214, 349  
branches of, 160  
border problems with, 87  
border trade, 121  
central government, 180  
characteristics of, 157  
Chin (Jurchen) war with, 350

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

850

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

- coins, 36  
 conquest of Ho-hsi, 179–80  
 control over China, 43  
 domination of Chinese by, 38, 39  
 ethnogenesis of, 13, 155–8  
 expansion into Ho-hsi, 172–3  
 and fall of Liao empire, 150–1  
 horse trade, 165  
 joint deliberation, 24  
 legal code, 28, 180  
 limits on power of monarch, 202  
 military cooperation with Mongols, 359, 360  
 mixed economy, 11  
 in Mongolian army, 403  
 Mongol campaign against, 261–2, 350, 364–5, 370  
 under Mongol rule, 631  
 move toward independence, 168–72  
 relations with Chin (Jurchen), 224  
 relations with Liao (Khitan), 147, 165, 166, 168, 169, 176–7, 180, 193, 198  
 status of ruler, relative to Sung court, 187–9  
 submission to T'ang, 158–61  
 and Sung, 104  
 trading position of, 180  
 during Wu-tai period, 164–7  
 in Yüan government, 596  
 Tantric Buddhism, 314, 315  
*tao* 道, 593, 594  
 Tao-hsüeh teaching, 40  
*Tao-la-sha* 倒刺沙, *see* Davla-shah  
*Tao te ching* 道德經 (Lao Tzu), 33, 271, 308, 316, 317, 481  
*Tao-tsung* 道宗 (Yeh-lü Hung-chi; Liao emperor) (r. 1055–1101): attempt to assassinate, 127–8; reign, 123–39  
 T'ao River 洮河, 201  
*Tao Tsung-i* 陶宗儀, 562  
 Taoism, Taoists, 40, 258, 364, 627  
 in Chin state, 306, 314, 316–18  
 conflict with Buddhists, 420–1  
 influence of, 645  
 Khubilai and, 446, 459, 462, 481–2  
 supervision of, 606  
 temples, 312, 462  
 Taoist canon, 308–9, 318  
 Tarbagatai region, 542, 545  
 Targi, Empress Dowager, 506–7, 522, 524, 525–6, 527, 529, 528, 530, 531, 534, 548, 559  
 Tarim basin, 48, 354, 366  
*Tartar relation*, 385  
 Tas Bukha, 512  
 Tas Temür, 537  
 Tatar (Ta-ta, Ta-tan; also Tsu-pu), people, 138, 140, 155, 176, 195, 246, 250–1, 323–4; Mongols' conflict with, 332, 333, 337–8, 340, 346; rebellion, 146  
 tax assessment/collection: Chin state, 284; south China, 613  
 tax assessment/collection (Mongolian empire), 363, 375–8, 379, 380, 383–4, 428; census and, 401–3; by Khubilai, 418; in reign of Khaishan, 511; rural areas, 661, 662–3; uniform system of, 399  
 tax equalization, 584  
 tax exemptions: for artisans, 470; for Confucian households, 636, 637; Liao (Khitan), 96, 132, 137; military households, 650; in reign of Temür, 497; to religious sects, 460, 462, 480, 607; Yüan, 613  
 tax framing, 380–1, 383–4, 388, 448  
 tax quotas, under Temür, 497, 500  
 tax reform, pilot project, 581  
 tax registers, 474  
 taxation, taxes, 38, 523  
 under Ayurbarwada, 522  
 Chin state, 292, 296, 301–4  
 on commerce, 304, 401, 449, 479, 566, 575  
 family classification in, 286–7  
 graduated, 402  
 grain, 448, 511  
 Hsia state, 154

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

851

- in kind, 154, 297, 303, 363  
 under Khubilai, 446–7, 448, 474,  
     511–12  
 Liao (Khitan), 64, 95–6  
 on merchants, 96, 474  
 Mongolian empire, 390  
 north China, 445  
 of *ortogh* merchants, 612  
 paid in currency, 300–1  
 Po-hai territories, 112–13  
 social class system and, 631  
 on trade, 96, 154, 180, 298, 475, 599,  
     600  
 Yüan, 566, 608, 618  
 Tayang khan, 339, 342, 354  
 Tayichi’ud lineage (Mongols), 251, 332,  
     334–5, 336; Temüjin attack on, 339,  
     340  
 Te-hsing 德興, 470  
 Te-hua, 470  
 Te-kuang 德光, 66, 68, 69, 70  
 Te-shou 德壽, 505  
 tea, 299  
 teachings (*chiao*), 636  
 Teb Tenggeri, 343  
 technical specialists, in administration of  
     north China, 360–2, 373  
 Tegshi 鐵失, 528, 532–3, 534, 535, 537;  
     execution of, 536  
 temple slavery, 287  
 temples, 39, 59, 63, 457; Buddhist, 196,  
     462, 470, 479–80, 509, 532, 540–1,  
     580; Confucian, 199, 200, 498;  
     sculpture in, 312; Taoist, 312, 462  
 Temüder 鐵木迭兒, 521, 527, 533, 537,  
     538; faction of, in coup d'état, 534;  
     and fiscal policy, 522–3; power of,  
     524–6, 529, 530, 548–9; reign of  
     terror, 528; as transitional type, 559  
 Temüge Odchigin, 367, 385, 539  
 Temüjin (Chinggis khan; T'ai-tsu;  
     Mongolian khaghan and emperor)  
     (r. 1206–27), 10, 14, 15, 22, 25, 85,  
     137, 205, 206, 207–8, 210–14, 238,  
     258, 263, 317, 329, 368, 373, 375,  
     385, 395, 405, 415, 491, 521, 539,  
     564, 616, 622, 630  
 administration, 343–5  
 allied with Ong khan, 335–8  
 ancestors of, 15  
 campaign against Chin (Jurchen),  
     251–4, 253 *map*, 259, 261  
 capacity for calculation and  
     ruthlessness, 334  
 conquest of, completed by Möngke,  
     411  
 death of, 213, 262, 364–5, 367, 397,  
     629  
 development of script under, 465  
 division of lands and armies among  
     sons of, 366–7  
 and early Mongolian state, 342–65  
 empire as joint patrimony of  
     descendants of, 558  
 enthroned, 343, 392  
 execution of Jamugha, 342  
 family and youth, 333–5  
 genealogy of, 330, 331  
 granted title of Chinggis khan, 343  
 hatred of Chin, 250–2  
 household establishment, 336–7  
 imperial guard/administration, 337  
 imprisoned by Tayichi’ud, 334–5  
 invasion of Hsi Hsia, 212 *map*  
 invoked in ritual, 472  
 Kereyid plot to kill, 341  
 law of, 379  
 legitimation of sovereignty of, 347–8  
 mandate to conquer the world, 400,  
     404  
 military establishment, 345–7  
 Mongolia and, 321–42  
*nököd* of, 343, 344, 608  
*ordos* of, 495, 535  
 personal retinue, 335  
 punitive expeditions, 338  
 and regional khans, 408  
 reverence toward, 457

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

852

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

- and rise of Mongolian federation, 245  
 successor to, 414  
 supreme ruler, 13  
 Turkic tribes submitted to, 611  
 and unification of steppe peoples, 338–42  
 worship of, 396
- Temür khaghan 鐵穆(or 木)耳**  
 (Yüan emperor) (r. 1294–1307; canonized as Ch'eng-tsung), 533, 598  
 as conservator of Khubilai's achievements, 496–8, 507  
 death of, 506, 530  
 reign of, 492–504, 509, 511, 518  
 succession of, 494–6  
 and transition to peace, 501–4
- Temür Tash**, 554–5
- Ten Abominable Crimes**, 94  
 “ten ranks,” 634
- Teng-chih 登至**, 157
- Teng-chou 登州**, 219, 233, 248
- Teng prefecture**, 234, 248
- Teng Wen-yüan 鄧文原**, 540
- theater**, Yüan, 467–8
- Three Dukes** (*san kung*), 78
- Three Kingdoms period**, 592
- Three Merkid**, 324
- Three Patriarchal Households** (*san-fu-fang*), 62
- Three Preceptors** (*san shih*), 78
- t'iao-ko* (articles and codes), 518
- ti-erb huang-hou* 第二皇后, 580
- Ti-fan* 帝範 (Plan for an emperor) (*T'ai-tsung*), 519
- Ti-ku-nai*, 迪古乃 *see* *Hai-ling wang* (*Ti-ku-nai*; Wan-yen Liang) (r. 1150–3)
- Ti-lieh*, 82
- Ti-lieh* tribes 敵烈, 139, 150, 151
- T'i-hsing an-ch'a-ssu* 提刑按察司, 603
- t'i-ming chi* 題名記, 563
- t'iao-ko* 條格, 518
- Tibet**, 5, 18, 196, 214, 434, 478, 606  
 government, 27  
 monastic organizations, 398  
 rebellions, 487–8  
 rival regimes in, 194–5  
 T'ang treaty with, 20
- Tibetan Buddhism**, 415, 461–2, 579
- Tibetan empire**, collapse of, 161
- Tibetan frontier**, 7
- Tibetan kingdom**, 4, 5
- Tibetan lamas**, 155
- Tibetan language**, 35, 154, 397
- Tibetan plateau**, 65
- Tibetan Tantric scriptural tradition**, 154
- Tibetans**, 5, 6, 7, 9, 13, 48, 50, 156, 157, 170, 182, 427  
 attacks on T'u-yü-hun, 158–9  
 in Ho-hsi, 162  
 in horse trade, 179  
 Hsia (Tangut) military campaigns against, 186  
 invasion of northwestern China, 159–60  
 Liao (Khitan) and, 192  
 military organization of, 183  
 Sung and, 193  
 Tanguts and, 158, 160–1  
 Tsung-ko dynasty, 173–6  
 warlords, 120
- Tibeto-Burman peoples**, 156
- Tibeto-Ch'iang population**, 169
- Tibeto-Chinese tribes**, 172–3
- Tieh-la** 迭刺, 62, 67
- Tieh-li-t'e** 迭里特, 58–9
- Tieh-li-t'i** 迭栗底, *see* Tieh-li-t'e
- T'ieh-chien-ku** 鐵堅古, 502
- T'ieh-mu-erh** 鐵穆 (木)耳, 532
- T'ieh-mu-erh T'a-shih** 鐵木兒塔 (達) 識, *see* Temür Tash
- T'ieh-mu-tieh-erh** 鐵木迭兒, *see* Temüder
- T'ieh-shih** 鐵失, *see* Tegshi
- T'ieh-shu** 貼書, 597
- T'ien-hsing** (Heavenly Rising) (reign title), 15

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

853

- T'ien-shan 天山 (mountains), 177, 323, 389  
 Tienshan region, 366  
*T'ien-sheng chiu kai hsin ting chin ling* 天盛舊改新定禁令, 204  
 T'ien-sheng 天盛 reign period, 204  
 T'ien-shui 天水, prince of, 232–3  
*T'ien-shui chün (wang, kung)* 天水郡 (王、公), duke of, 233  
 T'ien-shun 天順, 256, 541  
 T'ien-te 天德, 323  
 T'ien-te [chün] 天德「軍」, 76, 150, 323  
 T'ien-tso 天祚 (infant name Yen-hsi; Liao emperor) (r. 1101–25), 130, 135, 136, 223, 226  
     death of, 151  
     demoted, 148  
     fall of, 149–53  
     reign, 139–49  
 T'ien-tu 天都, 194, 195  
 Tientsin, 61  
*ting* 丁, 278  
*ting* 錠, 449, 500, 509, 511, 540, 552, 566  
 Ting-an (state), 102, 103  
 Ting-chia chou 定家州, 434  
 Ting-chou 定州, 105–7, 108  
 Ting-nan army 定難軍, 163  
 Ting-tsung, *see* Güyüg (T'ing-tsung) (r. 1246–58)  
 Ting-yüan [ch'eng] 定遠「城」, 148  
 titles, *see* ranks, titles  
 T'o-hu-t'o 脱虎脱, 510  
 T'o-pa 拓跋, 31, 45, 46, 159, 167, 214; tribal legacy, 168  
 T'o-pa Ch'ao-kuang 拓拔朝光, 160–1  
 T'o-pa Ch'i-meい 拓拔乞梅, 160  
 T'o-pa Ch'ien-hui 拓拔乾暉, 160  
 T'o-pa Ch'ih-tz'u 拓拔赤辭, 158, 159, 160  
 T'o-pa clan, 163  
 T'o-pa lineage, 160  
 T'o-pa Ning-ts'ung 拓拔寧叢, 157, 158  
 T'o-pa Ssu-chien 拓拔思諫, 164  
 T'o-pa Ssu-kung 拓拔思恭, 163, 164  
 T'o-pa Ssu-t'ai 拓拔思泰, 159  
 T'o-pa Tanguts, 157–8  
 T'o-pa territories, 170  
 T'o-pa Wei dynasty, 47  
 T'o-t'o 脱脫, 107, 512, 539, 598–28;  
     *see also* Toghtō  
 Toba, 10  
 Toba Wei 拓拔, 10  
 Toghōn Temür 妥懶貼睦爾 (Yüan Emperor) (r. 1333–68; canonized as Shun-ti), 485, 490, 546  
     death of, 561  
     and end of Yüan rule in China, 561–86  
     enthronement, 562, 566–72  
     exile to Korea, 557  
     reign of, 525, 552, 554, 557, 560, 561, 573–4, 578, 580–6, 652  
     reign titles, 568  
     and Toghtō administration, 573–4, 578–80  
     Yüan China at accession of, 561–6  
 Toghtō 脱脫, 510, 514, 539, 541, 543, 572–80, 582; centralization efforts, 575–7, 578, 582, 585; dismissal of, 578–80, 581, 583, 603–4; honors restored to, 549  
 Toghto'a, 335, 339, 354  
 Tökchong 德宗, 112  
 Tolui 拖雷, 263, 366, 372, 375, 389, 390, 397, 414, 415, 505  
     army under, 367  
     line of, 392  
     object of veneration, 396  
     and succession struggle, 421–2  
     widow of, 389  
 Toluids 六皇后, 387, 390, 394–5, 404  
     claims on Khaghanate, 367  
     control of army by, 395  
     legitimation, 396  
     split among, 411  
     and succession, 390–2  
     troops of, 393  
     victory of, 394  
 Tolochu, 415  
 Tombs, wall paintings, 39  
 Tonghae (Sea of Japan), 112

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

854

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

- To'oril, *see* Ong Khan (To'oril)
- Töregene 六皇后, 387; regency of, 381, 382–4, 385, 386
- tou* 斗 (peck), 292, 295
- Tou mo 寳默, 458
- t'ou-hsia* 投下, 520
- trade, 11, 19, 21  
 border markets, 205  
 Chin (Jurchens), 219, 234  
 China, 218  
 copper, iron, 97  
 expansion of, 658–9  
 horse and livestock, 159  
 Hsia (Tangut), 170, 178, 180  
 illicit, 161  
 Khubilai's policies and, 449–50  
 Liao (Khitan) and, 72, 110  
 Sung, 110, 234, 429, 430  
 taxes on, 96, 154, 180, 298, 475, 599, 600  
 tribute, 172; Uighurs, 162–3  
 Yüan, 643  
*see also* border trade; export trade; foreign trade
- trade caravans, 449
- trade routes, 120, 162, 176, 179
- trading stations, frontier, 142, 200
- traditionalism: Chin, 305, 319; in science, 306
- traditions, steppe, 560, 609, 616
- Tran dynasty, 407
- Tran Thanh-ton, 485
- Transcaucasus, 370, 412; census, 401; coinage, 402
- translation(s), 33–6, 563; of books, under Ayubarwada, 519–20; of Chinese works into Jurchen, 310; of Chinese works into Khitan, 93; of Confucian classics, 459
- Transoxania, 151
- transport system, 17; Chin control of, 297; Khubilai's government and, 449–50
- treatingies, 5; Chin/Hsi-Hsia, 261; Chin/Sung, 225, 226, 232–5, 240, 244, 249, 254, 298; Khwârazm/Mongol, 354; Sung/Hsia, 189, 193, 194
- treatingies (Khitan/Shâ-t'o), 58; Treaty of Shan-yüan, 108–10, 144; Liao/Sung, 120, 122, 137, 222
- treatingy partners, 20
- treatingy relations, 18–21
- tribal areas, logistic support for garrisons in, 117
- tribal aristocracy, Tangut, 197, 203
- tribal authority (Mongols), 346
- tribal chieftains, 140; ancestors of ruling clan of Chin, 219; Jurchen, 220; Tangut, 191
- tribal confederations, 321, 328
- tribal council (Chin), 265–70
- tribal customary law, 28
- tribal customs: and Chinese traditions, 288–9; *primus inter pares*, 183
- tribal customs (Khitan), 77; and Chinese written law, 116; succession, 75
- tribal dependents (Khitan), 99
- tribal distribution (Mongolia), 322–4
- tribal election of rulers (Jurchen), 221
- tribal groups, 45, absorbed into federations, 13; Jurchen, 221
- tribal judges (*i-li-pi*), 126–7
- tribal justice, 127
- tribal leaders, 80; and Chinese court, 8
- tribal nations, 5
- tribal nobility (Khitan), encroachments on privileges of, 128, 130–1
- tribal officials (Khitan), 78
- tribal organizations, 79; Jurchen, 220
- tribal peoples, 4; incorporated into system of indirect rule, 7–8, 9; Khitan administration of, 63–5, 66, 67, 77, 138; pacification of, by A-pao-chi, 60–1; power of, 43; prosperity of, 166
- tribal population: census of, 96; conscription from 37; taxation of, 95
- tribal practices (Tangut), and power of monarch, 202

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

855

- tribal society(ies), leader-follower relations in, 22
- tribal structure (Khitan), 59–60, 62
- tribal units, in Chin military, 276–7
- tribal uprisings, Hsia state, 199
- tribal way of life, (Khitan), 281
- tribes (*irgen*), 11, 12, 16, 321; in Jurchen nation, 286; management of internal affairs, 14; of Mongolia, 321–4; as political entity, 321, 325; *see also* steppe tribes
- tribunals, traveling (*jargbus*), 394
- tributary relations, 14–16, 218; Chin (Jurchen), 217, 219, 350; Koryō/Liao, 112; Liao (Khitan), 123; Mongol/Chin (Jurchen), 251–2; Sung/Hsia (Tangut), 177
- tributary system, 8; Chinese use of, 328–9; Chin (Jurchen), 331; of Sung, 17–18
- tribute (*kung*), 14, 16, 18, 43, 109, 113 Chin (Jurchen) to Liao, 220 Chin (Jurchen) to Mongols, 351–2 collected by Mongol empire, 403 to court of Tugh Temür, 550 demanded of Liao (Khitan) by Chin (Jurchen), 222 forest tribes to Mongols, 348 household basis of collection of, 378 Hsia, 120 Korea, to Mongols, 370, 437 to Liao (Khitan), 138 Liao (Khitan) to T'ang, 49 Mongol to Chin (Jurchen), 251 Mongolian khaghan's primacy over, 374 Mongolian tribes, to China, 328 to Mongols, 377, 485–7 Sung, to Chin (Jurchen), 234, 244, 249, 254, 302, 358–9 Sung, to Liao (Khitan), 108, 109, 110, 223, 225 Sung, to Mongols, 422 Tanguts to Khitan, 123 transport of, 297, 450
- Uighurs, to Mongols, 350 to Yüan court, 504, 539
- tribute-trade traffic, 172
- Tripitaka, 196, 204
- True Great Way (Chen-ta-tao) sect (Taoism), 318
- tsa-chü* 雜劇, 640, 660
- tsa-hu* 雜戶, 286
- tsai-sheng* 再生, 90
- Ts'ai, 523
- Ts'ai Ching 蔡京, 229, 307
- T'sai-chou 蔡州, 242, 264, 372
- Ts'ai Prefecture, 301
- Ts'ai-shih, 242
- Ts'ai Wu-chiu 蔡五九, 523
- Ts'ao 曹, 162, 177
- Ts'ao, Lady, 198, 199
- Ts'ao family, 121, 162
- Ts'ao Hsien-shun 曹賢順, 177
- Ts'ao Li-yung 曹利用, 108
- Ts'ao mu tzu* 草木子, 594–20; 609–49
- Ts'ao Shou 曹壽, 121
- Ts'ao Tsung-shou 曹宗壽, 176–7
- Ts'ao Wei 曹瑋, 175
- Ts'ao Yüan-yung 曹元用, 540
- Ts'e-lin* (Po Chu-i), 34
- Tsinghai 青海, 9
- tso-ch'eng* 左丞
- tso ch'eng-hsiang* 左丞相, 268, 427, 589
- tso-hsiang* 左廂, 183
- tsu* 族, 565
- Tsu-chou 祖州, 76
- Tsu-pu 阻卜、阻革彙, tribes, 91n43, 121, 131, 138–40, 146, 176, 195, 250; and Liao empire, 138–9; *see also* Tatars (Tsu-pu)
- tsu-pu chieh-tu shih* 族部節度使, 277
- Tsu-pu war (1092–1102), 138–9
- Tsu-wu 阻午, 51, 53
- Ts'u Li 崔立, 264
- Ts'u Ming-tao, 431
- tsung* 宗 (ancestor), 284
- Tsung-chen, *see* Hsing-tsung (Tsung-chen; Liao emperor) (r. 1031–55)

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

856

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

- tsung-ch'i* 宗戚, 534  
*Tsung-cheng fu* 宗正府, 591–10  
*Tsung-chih yüan* 總制院, 461, 478  
 Tsung-jen Guard, 538  
 Tsung-ko 宗哥, 173–5, 195  
 Tsung-ko ch'eng 宗哥城, 173, 174  
 Tsung-ko dynasty, 173, 195; rise of, 173–6  
 Tsung-ko tribes, 173  
 Tsushima, 442  
 Tu Ch'ung-wei 杜重威, 73  
*Tu-hu-fu* 都護府, 591  
*Tu-shui-chien* 都水監, 597  
*tu-t'ung* 都統, 276  
*tu-tu fu* 都督府, 158  
 Tu-wa 篤哇, 501–4, 507, 542  
*tu yüan-shuai* 都元帥, 276  
 T'u-chien 土堅 (Tügel), 545  
 T'u-chüeh 突厥, 45, 46, 47, 49, 50, 158, 159, 160; power of, 48; T'ang defeat of, 47  
*t'u-fa ling* 禿髮令, 187  
 T'u-fan 吐蕃, 156  
 T'u-la 禿刺, 505  
 T'u-lü-pu tribe 突呂不, 151  
 T'u-po, 182  
 Tu-tsung death of, 434  
 T'u-tan 徒單 (Empress Dowager), 241, 286n39  
 T'u-yü-han, 160  
 T'u-yü-han 吐谷渾, 9, 66, 163; Tibetan attacks on, 158–9; T'o-pa Tangut alliance with, 158  
 Tuan Chen 段貞, 499  
 Tuan family, 405, 418  
 Tuan-Hsing-chih 段興智, 407, 417–18  
*tuan-li* 斷例 (decided precedents), 518  
*tuan-shih kuan* 斷事官, 520, 591, 607  
 Tügel, prince 土堅, 545  
 Tugh Temür 圖帖睦爾 (Yüan emperor) (r. 1328–32; canonized as Wen-tsung), 525, 536, 538–9, 541–3, 545–7, 549–53, 556, 559, 560, 566, 567, 568, 610, 573  
 death of, 557, 567  
 enthroned, 543  
 failure of succession arrangements, 556–7  
 legitimacy of rule of, 550–1  
 patronage of Chinese arts and letters, 553–6, 560  
 plots against, 551  
 political development and fiscal policies, 549–53  
 posthumous denunciation of, 573  
 and regicide at Ongghochatu, 545–7  
 reign of, 525, 541–6, 559  
 on Toghön Temür, 566–7  
 and war of restoration, 541–5  
 Tula River, 340  
 Tumad, 356  
*tümen*, 361, 368, 400, 403  
 Tun-huang 敦煌, 121, 154, 176, 179  
*t'un-t'ien* 屯田, 601  
 Tung-chan 董氈, 192, 193, 194  
 Tung Chieh-yüan 董解元, 309  
 Tung-ching 東京, 352  
 Tung-hai wang 東海王, 146, 151  
 Tung-lou 東樓, 59  
*Tung-lu Meng-ku chün tu yüan-shuai fu* 東路蒙古軍都元帥府, 544  
 Tung-p'ing 東平, 69, 230  
 Tung-shan group 東山 (Tanguts), 160  
 Tung-tan 東丹, 66, 69, 70, 112; *see also* Po-hai  
*t'ung* 統, 624  
*T'ung-cheng yüan* 通政院, 512, 590  
*T'ung chih t'iao ko* 通制條格  
*T'ung-bo* 統和 (coinage), 97  
 T'ung-kuan forts, 372  
*T'ung-li* 通曆, 107  
 Tungusic language, 45, 46, 216–17  
 Tungusic people, 46, 141, 215  
 Tungus tribes, 12  
 Tunhuang, 6  
 Tura, Prince, 505  
 Turfan, 4, 5, 6, 35, 196  
 Turk khaghanate, 329

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

857

- Turkestan, 352, 354, 356, 366, 393, 630  
 coinage, 402  
 Chaghadaid princes in, 411  
 Mongolian administration in, 374, 378, 381, 386  
 Mongolian Secretariat in, 374, 383, 398  
 subjugation of, 357  
 tax assessment, 401  
 urban centers, 400
- Turkestanis, in Mongolian government, 380
- Turkic alphabet, 465
- Turkic clans, 286
- Turkic empire, 157
- Turkic groups, 154
- Turkic language, 45, 46, 216, 611, 630
- Turkic peoples, 46, 53, 323
- Turkic tradition, 347
- Turkic tribes, Mongols and, 611
- Turkish (T'u-chüeh) empire, *see* T'u-chüeh
- Turko-Mongolian culture, 156
- Turks, 9, 159, 321  
 influence on Mongolian state, 348, 350  
 loan words from Chinese, 13  
 in Mongolian army, 403  
 and restoration movement, 547  
 in service of Khubilai, 416  
 settled in Ordos, 158, 159  
 Sha't'o, 6, 55, 70, 85  
 in Yüan society, 611
- Tüs, 400
- tz'u* 詞 (song), 308
- Tzu chih t'ung chien* 資治通鑑  
 (Comprehensive mirror for aid in government) (*Ssu-ma Kuang*), 5910, 519
- Tzu shan ta ch'üan chi 紫山大全集, 597–25
- Ubaidallâh 兀伯都刺, 537, 543
- Udus Bukha 兀都思不花, 530
- Uighur 畏兀兒 empire, 4; collapse of, 4, 5, 11, 53, 54, 77, 97, 110, 120, 121, 131, 154, 159–63, 165, 629–16, 630–18, 646
- Uighur khaghanate, fall of, 162
- Uighur language, 35, 397
- Uighur script, 32, 465–6, 467, 579, 605; adapted to Mongolian, 345, 611
- Uighuristan, 502
- Uighurs, 5, 6, 9, 12, 29, 38, 46, 57, 77, 97, 110, 131, 138, 182, 323, 354  
 as administrative experts, 629, 630  
 chief minister, 202  
 and Chin (Jurchen), 239  
 envoys, in (Liao Khitan) court, 67  
 foreign relations, 162  
 and horse trade, 165  
 importance of, to Mongolian rule, 348, 630  
 legal cases involving, 591  
 Liao (Khitan) and, 50, 65  
 merchants, 11, 63, 180  
 in Mongolian administration, 362, 373, 380  
 in Mongolian army, 403, 431  
 and Mongolian conquest, 207, 349–50, 479, 611  
 mourning rituals, 589–90  
 new kingdom, 161–2  
 right to bear arms, 595  
 seized suzerainty of Yeh-lü Ta-shih, 151  
 in service of Khubilai, 416  
 states controlled by, 120, 121  
 Sung and, 169, 170  
 and T'ang, 50  
 Tanguts and, 154, 159, 165, 175, 176–7, 180, 186  
 in Yüan government, 587, 596
- Ulaghchi, 412
- Ulus Bukha 兀魯思不花, 533
- Uncivilized Jurchen, 220
- unified rule (*t'ung*), 624
- universal dominion mandate (Mongols), 400
- Universal Emperor, Khubilai as, 461
- “universal khan” (*gurkhan* [*ko-erh-han*]), 151

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

858

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

- universal sovereignty, Mongol claim of, 348
- universal script, 466–7, 472
- universalism, of Khubilai, 472–3
- Upper Kerülen, 336
- urban class, 658
- urban centers: dependent on transport for food, 297; *see also* cities
- urban culture, 467
- urbanization, 658
- Uriyangkhadai, 392, 407, 409, 410
- Uru'ud (lineage), 337
- Üs Temür 玉昔帖木兒, 495, 496, 548, 558–9
- usufruct, 327
- usury, 612, 659
- Utrār, 354–6
- Uz-beq, 539
- values, Confucian, 560
- “variety entertainments,” 467
- vassals, vassal status, 14–16, 47, 98, 239, 244, 251, 261; to Liao (Khitan), 71, 79, 81, 84, 104, 105, 111, 112, 141, 220
- veritable records (*shib-lu*) (Liao), 93, 130, 139
- vernacular, 467, 468
- vice-censor in chief (*yü-shib chung-ch'eng*), 497
- viceroyes (*bu-hou*), 79
- Vietnam, 3
- Vijaya (prince of Java), 487
- village drinking ceremony (*bsiang yin chiu li*), 581–2
- “villainous ministers,” 473, 475, 478, 480
- Volga Bulgars, 402
- Wa 洼, 51
- Wa-ch'iao 瓦橋 border barrier, 82, 86
- wages, Chin industry, 296
- Wan, 82
- Wan-nu, 258–9
- Wan-yen 完顏 (clan), 141, 142, 219, 220, 221, 232, 258, 266, 268, 285; clan intermarriage, 286; massacre of male members of, 264; officeholding privileges of, 272; and social structure, 284–5
- Wan-yen dynasty, end of, 265
- Wan-yen Hsiang, 251
- Wan-yen Liang 完顏亮 (r. 1149–61), 200
- Wan-yen T'ao 完顏璫, 311
- Wan-yen Tsung-fu, 243
- Wan-yen Tsung-pi, 233, 234
- Wan-yen Yün-chi, *see* Wei-shao wang (Wan-yen Yun-chi) (r. 1208–13)
- Wang 王, 188
- Wang 關, 223, 232
- Wang, Lady, 199
- Wang I, 513, 528, 538, 550
- Wang An-shih, 307
- Wang-chan 王禪, 541
- Wang Che 王嘉 (“Crazy Wang”), 317
- Wang Chen-p'eng 王振鵬, 513
- Wang Chi 王集, 529
- Wang Chi-chung 王繼忠, 105, 107–8
- Wang Chieh 王結, 513, 540
- Wang Chien 王建, 163
- Wang Ch'in-jo 王欽若, 108
- Wang Chong 王誦 (posthumous title of Mokchong), *see* Mokchong (Kong ö king)
- Wang Hsün 王恂, 458
- Wang Hüm 王欽 (Tokchong), 112
- Wang Kōn 王建, 100
- Wang Kuei 王渢, 258
- Wang Kung-chen 王拱辰, 124
- Wang O 王鶴, 423, 459–60, 474–5, 587, 605
- Wang Pan 王盤, 599
- Wang Pi 王顥, 514
- Wang Pao-pao 王保保, 652
- Wang Shao 王韶, 179
- Wang Shih-hsi 王士熙, 538
- Wang Sun 王詢, *see* Hyōnjong (Koryö king)

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

859

- Wang Te-ch'en 汪德臣, 405  
 Wang Ting 王鼎, 130, 133  
 Wang T'ing-yün 王庭筠, 311  
 Wang Tseng 王曾, 98  
 Wang-tu 望都, 105, 107  
 Wang Wen-t'ung 王文統, 424–6  
 Wang Yüeh 王約, 513, 514, 531  
 Wang Yün 王惲, 446, 595  
 war councils, 24  
 wards/precincts, 660–1, 662  
 warlords, 6–7, 54, 580, 582, 583  
 wars, warfare, 18, 36–8, 225  
     Chin (Jurchen), 140–9, 151, 221, 254,  
         301, 305  
     Chin (Jurchen) against Sung, 201,  
         227–32, 240–4, 245–50, 259, 268,  
         275, 298, 316  
     Chin (Jurchen) with Mongols, 259–65,  
         260 *map*  
     costs of, 38  
     Hsia (Tangut), 155, 165, 180, 181, 187,  
         188, 193–4, 195–6, 198, 199,  
         208–10 importance of horses in,  
         294  
     Liao (Khitan), 46, 47, 91, 117, 120,  
         121, 122–3, 138–9, 140–9, 151, 222  
     Liao (Khitan) with Koryo, 103–4,  
         111–12, 113  
     Liao (Khitan) with Sung, 85–6, 89, 90,  
         91, 98, 99–100, 104–8, 106 *fig*  
     Mongolian empire, 501–2  
     prosperity and, 166  
     siege, 363, 431  
     Sung, 12–13  
     used by Mongolian tribes in economic  
         relations, 328  
     *see also* Mongolian conquest/expansion  
 water control projects, 447  
 water transport, 297, 573, 658  
 waterways, Chin control of, 297  
 Waterways Supervisorate (*Ho tao t'i-chü*  
     ssu), 599  
 way of life: Jurchens, 217, 219, 244–5;  
     tribal, 239, 281  
     weapons, regulations regarding carrying,  
         595  
 Wei 魏, 44, 79, 157, 158  
*wei* 衛, 502, 532  
*Wei cheng chung kao* 為政忠告, 597–26  
 Wei River 渭河, 11, 174, 233, 365, 408  
 Wei-chou 渭州, Kansu, 174  
 Wei dynasty, 592  
 Wei-ming 鬼名 (surname), 181  
 Wei-ming A-wu 鬼名阿吳, 195  
 Wei-ming An-chüan 鬼名安全 *see* Hsiang-  
     tsung (Wei-ming An-chüan; Hsia  
         emperor) (r. 1206–11)  
 Wei-ming Ch'a-ke 鬼名察哥, 198, 200, 202  
 Wei-ming Ch'ien-shun 鬼名乾順, *see*  
     Ch'ung-tsung (Wei-ming Ch'ien-  
         shun), Hsia emperor (r. 1086–1139)  
 Wei-ming Ch'un-yu 鬼名純祐 (Hsia  
         emperor), *see* Huan-tsung  
 Wei-ming clan, 191, 193, 194, 195; and  
     Ch'ung-tsung reign, 197–8  
 Wei-ming dynastic rule, 203  
 Wei-ming Hsien 鬼名懇 (Hsia emperor)  
     (r. 1226–7), 213  
 Wei-ming Jen-chung 鬼名仁忠, 198, 199,  
     200  
 Wei-ming Jen-hsiao 鬼名仁孝, *see*  
     Jen-tsung (Wei-ming Jen-hsiao;  
         Hsia emperor (r. 1140–93))  
 Wei-ming Liang-tso 鬼名諶祚 (Hsia  
         emperor), *see* I-tsung  
 Wei-ming Nang-hsiao 鬼名囊霄 (Hsia  
         emperor), *see* Ching-tsung  
 Wei-ming Ping-ch'ang 鬼名秉常, *see* Hui-  
     tsung (Wei-ming Ping-ch'ang; Hsia  
         emperor) (r. 1068–86)  
 Wei-ming Shan-yu, 186  
 Wei-ming Te-wang 鬼名德旺, 364  
 Wei-ming Te-wang, *see* Hsien-tsung  
     (Wei-ming Te-wang, Hsia emperor)  
     (r. 1223–6)  
 Wei-ming Tsun-hsü 鬼名遵頊, *see* Shen-  
     tsung (Wei-ming Tsun-hsü; Hsia  
         emperor) (r. 1211–23)

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

860

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

- Wei-po (province), 50  
 Wei-pu-ch'i, 175  
 Wei-shao wang 衛紹王 (*Wan-yen Yün-chi*)  
 (r. 1208–13), 207, 250, 251–2, 254  
*Wei shu* (*Wei Shou*), 44, 46  
 Wei Su 危素, 571–25  
*Wei-wu-erh wen-tzu* 畏吾兒文字, 579  
 Wei Yü 危於  
*wen* 文 (cash), 300  
 Wen, Lady 文妃, 146–7  
*wen-chi* 文集  
 Wen-ch'i-hsin 溫溪心, 194  
*wen-jen hua* 文人畫, 468, 469  
 Wen-pu-ch'i 溫逋奇, 173, 175  
 Wen T'ien-hsiang 文天祥, 436  
 Wen-tsung 文宗, *see* Tugh Temür (Yüan emperor) (r. 1328–32; canonized as Wen-tsung)  
 West(ern) Asia, 44, 400, 401; Mongol campaign in, 403–4, 411; tax collection, 402  
 Western Asians: changing relation to Chinese elite, 644–8; in Mongolian Society, 610, 611; *ortogh* merchants, 658, 659; registered in artisan households, 654, 655; as social class, 630, 631, 633, 634, 637, 638, 642; *see also se-mu*  
 Western Capital, 147  
 Western Capital (Chin), 252  
 Western Capital (Koryō), 111  
 Western Capital (Liao), 79, 98, 99, 117, 149  
 Western Capital circuit (Liao), 146, 147, 151  
 Western Chou period, 11  
 Western (Hsi) Liao, *see* Khara khitan  
 Western Regions, Mongolian campaign in, 352–7, 355 *map*  
 western steppe, brought under Mongolian dominion, 357  
 Western Wei, 10  
 White Cloud sect (Buddhism), 315  
 White Lotus sect (Buddhism), 315  
 “wild” Jurchen (*sheng Nü-chih*), 11, 141  
 wine, state monopoly over, 295–6  
 Wo Cha-tse 韓扎實, 213  
 Wo-li-pu 韓離不, 227, 229, 230  
 Wo-lu 韓魯, 230  
 Wo Tao-ch'ung 韓道沖, 204, 213  
*wo-t'o* 韓脫, 600  
*Wo-t'o-chü* 韓脫局, 600  
*Wo-t'o-so* 韓脫所, 600  
*Wo-t'o tsung-kuan-fu* 韓脫總管府, 600  
 women: in Liao public life, 87; in Mongolian social customs, 362; status of, in Mongolian society, 330  
 Wǒn jong 元宗, 436, 437  
 world view: Chinese, 43; expansionism in, 429  
 writer's assistant (*t'ieh-shu*), 597  
 writing systems, 4, 31, 67, 282–3  
 written language(s), 4, 30, 33; Kubilai's policy toward, 465–7  
 written texts, diffusion of, 468  
 Wu, T'ang Empress, reign of terror, 29n21  
 Wu Ch'eng 吳澄, 531, 540  
 Wu-ch'i-mai 吳乞買 *see* T'ai-tsung (Wu-ch'i-mai; Chin emperor) (r. 1123–38)  
 Wu Chih-fang 吳直方, 572  
 Wu Ching 吳競, 519  
 Wu Hsi 吳曦, 248  
 Wu Hsien 武仙, 360  
*wu-hu-ssu hu* 五戶絲戶, 522  
 Wu-jo, 102  
 Wu-ku 鳥古, 61, 65, 69, 150, 151  
 Wu-ku-lun 鳥古論, 286n39  
 Wu-ku-nai 鳥古迺, 219, 220  
 Wu-ku-sun Chung-tuan 鳥古孫仲端, 261, 359  
 Wu-ku tribe, 150, 151  
 Wu Kuang-ch'eng 吳廣成, 198–9  
*wu kuo* 五國, 141, 218, 220  
 Wu-kuo ch'eng 五國城, 232  
 Wu-la-hai ch'eng 兀刺海城, 207  
*wu-li ch'ten* 物力錢, 304  
 Wu-lin-ta 鳥林答, 286n39

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

861

- Wu-lu 鳥魯, *see* Shih-tsung (Wu-lu);  
 Wan-yen; Chin emperor) (r. 1161–89)
- Wu-lu-ssu Pu-hua 兀魯思不花 (Ulus Bukha), 533
- Wu-nung-ssu* 務農司, 598
- Wu-po-tu-la 兀伯都刺, *see* Ubaidallāh
- Wu-tai 五代, *see* Five dynasties
- Wu-t'ai 五台 sacred mountain, 509, 532
- Wu-tai annals, 165
- Wu-tai period, 163; Tanguts during, 164–7
- Wu-t'ai shan 五臺山, 314
- wu-tsu* 兀卒, 181, 188
- Wu-tsung (T'ang emperor) (r. 840–6), 50
- Wu-tsung 武宗, *see* Khaishan (Yüan emperor) (r. 1307–1311)
- Wu-tu-pu 吾睹補, *see* Hsüan-tsung (Wu-tu-pu; Chin emperor) (r. 1213–23)
- Wu-ya-shu 鳥雅束 (r. 1103–13), 142, 220–1
- Wu yüan-kuei , 531
- Wu-Yüeh 吳越, 71–2, 85, 86
- Ya-chou 雅州, 410
- Ya Hsi Ch'i-tan shib*, 50
- Ya-hu-tu 牙忽都 (Yakhudu), 505
- Ya-li 牙里, *see* Nieh-li
- Yai-shan 崖山, 435
- Yakhudu 牙忽都, 505
- Yalu River, 100, 101, 102, 103, 111, 112, 113, 114, 139, 141; pontoon bridge, 111–12
- Yang An-kuo, 254–6
- Yang-chi-ch'a-erh 仰吉察兒 (Yangichar), 504
- Yang-chou 揚州, 257, 433, 434, 577, 658
- Yang clan, 254–6
- Yang Dorji, 525, 528, 538
- Yang Hsiung 揚雄, 271
- Yang Lien-chen-chia 楊璉真加, 479–80, 482
- Yang P'o, 221–2
- Yang Ting-yü 楊庭玉, 538
- Yang Tuo-erh-chih 楊朵兒只, *see* Yang Dorji
- Yang-tzu* 揚子 (Yang Hsiung's *Fa-yen*), 271
- Yang Wei-chen 楊維楨, 565n15, 574n30
- Yangchow prefecture 揚州: population, 658
- Yangichar 仰吉察兒, 504
- Yangtze region, 17
- Yangtze River 揚子, 83, 241, 242, 405, 410, 421, 431, 434; as border between Sung and Mongols, 422
- Yao K'un 姚坤, 66
- Yao-lien 遙輦 clan, 49, 52, 53, 57, 61
- Yao-lien khaghans, 51, 51 *tab*, 53
- Yao Shu 姚樞, 408, 409, 415, 417–18, 453, 587; death of, 474–5
- Yao Sui 姚燧, 513
- Yao Yen-ch'ou 藥彥稠, 165
- Yarlung royal house, 173
- Year of the Tiger, 342
- Yeh-chi 野雞, 166
- Yeh-erh-chi-ni 也兒吉尼, 549
- Yeh-hei-tieh-erh 也黑迭兒, 455
- Yeh-li chieftains 野利, 161
- Yeh-li clan, 160, 169, 187, 189, 190
- Yeh-li Jen-jung 野利任榮, 182
- Yeh-li lineages, 190
- Yeh-li-k'o-wen 也里可溫, 540
- Yeh-li Wang-jung 野利旺榮, 182, 187, 189, 190
- Yeh-li Yü-ch'i 野利遇乞, 182, 187, 189, 190
- Yeh-lü 耶律 (tribe), 56–7
- Yeh-lü Chang-nu 耶律章奴, rebellion of, 143–4
- Yeh-lü Ch'u-ts'ai 耶律楚材, 22, 213, 311, 315, 373, 636; death of, 381; eclipse of, 378–81; reforms of, 364, 375–8, 402
- Yeh-lü Ch'ung-yüan 耶律重元, 94
- Yeh-lü clan, 52, 92, 127, 241, 286; chieftains of, 59; power struggles in, 61–2; structure of, xx
- Yeh-lü Ho-lu 耶律曷魯, 90

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

862

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

- Yeh-lü Hsiao-chieh 耶律孝傑, 136  
 Yeh-lü Hsieh-chen 耶律斜軫, 89, 90, 105  
 Yeh-lü Hsiao-ko 耶律休哥, 90, 105  
 Yeh-lü I-hsin 耶律九辛, 125, 143; dominance of, 128–32; and execution of Empress Hsüan-i, 133–5; fall of, 135–8; posthumous vengeance on, 139  
 Yeh-lü Jen-hsien 耶律仁先, 125, 129, 133, 138  
 Yeh-lü Ku-yü 耶律谷欲, 93  
 Yeh-lü Li-hu 耶律李胡, 75–6  
 Yeh-lü Liu-ko 耶律留哥, 257–9, 352  
 Yeh-lü Lü 耶律履, 311  
 Yeh-lü Ming 耶律明, 128  
 Yeh-lü P'en-nu 耶律盆奴, 111  
 Yeh-lü P'u-lu 耶律薄魯, 92  
 Yeh-lü royal clan, 77, 78  
 Yeh-lü royal house, 51–2  
 Yeh-lü Sa-la-chu 耶律撒刺木, 127  
 Yeh-Qiü Shih-lu, 57  
 Yeh-lü Shu-chen 耶律庶箴, 92, 132  
 Yeh-lü Shu-ch'eng 耶律庶成, 93, 116n116  
 Yeh-lü Su 耶律蘇, 131  
 Yeh-lü surname, 89  
 Yeh-lü Ta-shih 耶律大石, 145, 197–9, 150, 151–3, 238  
 Yeh-lü T'ieh-pu 耶律貼不, 127  
 Yeh-lü T'ien-te 耶律天德, 76  
 Yeh-lü Wo-t'e-la 耶律斡特刺, 139  
 Yeh-lü Wu-chih 耶律屋質, 75  
 Yeh-lü Yen 耶律儼, 130n166  
 Yeh-lü Yü-tu 耶律余覩 (also 余睹), 140, 146–7  
 Yeh-lü Yüan 耶律院, 75  
 Yeh-mu 奶母, 166, 167  
 Yeh Shih, 247  
 Yeh-sun T'ieh-mu-erh 也孫鐵木兒, *see* Yesün Temur (T'ai-ting; Yüan emperor) (r. 1323–8)  
 Yeh Tzu-ch'i 葉子奇, 594, 609  
*Yeke Monghol Ulus* ("Great Mongolian Nation"), 490  
 Yekü, Prince, 405  
 Yellow River 黃河 (Huang ho), 107, 117, 123, 150, 151, 154, 155, 158, 162, 170, 178, 213, 254, 259, 263, 365, 455  
 alluvial lands, 291  
 floods, 245, 246, 247, 256  
 rerouting project, 576, 578  
 shifting course, 575  
 waters diverted from, 208, 349  
 Yellow River plains: Chin population in, 279; natural disasters in, 585  
 Yen 燕 (Peking), 180, 224, 225, 227; *see also* Peking  
 Yen (state), 44, 61  
 Yen, 148  
 Yen, prince of, 557  
 Yen-an 延安, 163  
 Yen-ching, 16, 361  
 Yen-ching 燕京 (Peking), 208, 240, 241; *see also* Peking  
 Yen-chou 鹽州, 160, 166, 167  
 Yen-chou prefecture, 166  
 Yen-chou ch'uan 鹽州川, 213  
 Yen-hsi, *see* T'ien-tso (Liao emperor) (r. 1101–25)  
 Yen-men 雁門, 70, 99  
 Yen-men pass, 70  
 Yen-mu-chin 巖母堇, 114, 107  
 Yen-sa-ko, 91n43  
 Yen T'ieh-ku-ssu 燕帖古思, *see* El Tegüs  
 Yen T'ieh-mu-erh 燕帖木兒, *see* El Temür  
*yen-yin* 鹽引, 509  
 Yen-yu ju-chih 延祐儒治, 526  
 Yenesei region, 328  
 Yesü Möngke, 395  
 Yesügei, 333–4, 335, 337, 340  
 Yesüi, 365–6  
 Yesün Temür 也孫帖木兒 (T'ai-ting; Yüan emperor) (r. 1323–8), 521, 533, 534, 546  
 and assassination of Shidebala, 535–6, 537  
 consorts, 548  
 court of, 537–8

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

863

- death of, 541, 542, 543  
enthronement, 536  
legitimacy of, 536–7, 538–9  
line of, made illegitimate, 549  
popular uprisings in reign of, 551  
purge of Shidebala's assassins, 536–7  
reconciliatory policies of, 538–41  
reign of, 535–41, 547, 549, 552, 554,  
    559, 560  
*Yilan shih*, 498  
*yin* 蔭, 隘 (protection), 92, 272  
*yin* 引 privilege, 515–17, 615  
Yin-chou 銀州, 160, 168, 170  
Yin-ch'uan, 121  
Yin prefecture, 163  
*yin-shih* 隱士, 468  
Ying-chou瀛州, 56, 82, 104–5, 107–8,  
    151  
Yin-shan Mountains, 117, 150  
Yin-shan Range, 147  
Ying-hsien, 151  
Ying-tien 應天, empress dowager, 68,  
    75–6, 89, 91  
Ying-tsung 英宗 *see* Shidebala Khagan  
    (Yuan emperor) (r. 1320–23)  
Yǒnp'o 連浦, 112  
*yu ch'eng-hsiang* 右丞相, 427, 444, 567, 572,  
    575, 589, 603  
Yü Chi 優集, 540, 554, 555, 556, 566,  
    567n17, 570, 606n46, 610n53  
Yu-chou 肅州, 50, 54, 56, 61, 62, 70, 163,  
    186, 189; (Khitan) invasion of,  
    66–7; siege of, 64; *see also* Peking  
Yü Ch'üeh 余闕, 565, 581  
Yü-feng Mountain 玉峯山, 136  
Yü-hsi T'ieh-mu-erh 玉昔帖木兒,  
    *see* Üs Temür  
*yu-hsiang* 右廂, 183  
Yü-k'ou 渼口 border barrier, 82  
Yü-kuan 榆關, 64  
Yü-lin 榆林, 160  
Yü-men 玉門, 154  
Yu prefecture, 163  
*yü-shih chung-ch'eng* 御史中丞, 497  
*yü-shih ta-fu* 御史大夫  
*Yü-shih tai* 御史臺, 79, 186, 269, 427  
Yü-t'ien, 于闐, *see* Khotan  
Yü-wen 宇文, 15, 44–5  
*Yü-yüeh* 于越 (office), 57, 58, 60, 77, 90,  
    125  
Yüan 元, 16, 17, 286, 317, 457  
    domination of China, 38  
    household of emperors, 22–3  
    opera, 309, 310  
    reunification of China, 18  
    succession, 24  
    *see also* Mongolian empire; Mongolian  
        rule; Mongols  
Yüan, Lady, 147, 149  
Yüan armies, decadence of, 576–7  
Yüan China, 413; at accession of Toghōn  
    Temür, 561–6; provinces of, 26  
*Yüan-chün* 猥軍, 144  
Yüan court, 1, 465; factional struggles,  
    524–7; and regionalization, 584; of  
    Yesün Temür, 537–8  
Yüan culture, cosmopolitanism in, 472–3  
Yüan drama (*tsa-chü*), 660; meaning of, in  
    social history, 640–3  
Yüan dynastic history, *see* *Yüan shih*  
Yüan dynasty, 1, 2, 28, 32, 214, 238, 267,  
    268, 273, 306, 493, 498  
    Bayan's relation to, 568 bilinguality,  
    33, 35  
    compilation of documents of,  
    555–6  
    control over China, 43  
    fall of, 41–2, 490, 561, 573, 651  
    institutional history of, 269, 556  
    and legal code, 518–19  
    legitimacy of, in China, 616, 617–18,  
        624–7  
    monetary system, 36, 301  
    nobility system and, 522  
    postal system, 298  
    proclaimed by Khubilai, 616, 624  
    reasons for fall of, 584–6  
    revenue sources, 566

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24331-5 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 6: Alien Regimes and Border States, 907–1368

Edited by Herbert Franke and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

864

## GLOSSARY-INDEX

- scholars and artists in governments of, 555, 560  
 shift of imperial line in, 541–5, 547, 549  
 social history, 657–61  
 succession, 527  
 Toghön Temür tenth emperor of, 561  
 triumph of, 546  
 Yüan emperors, winter palace, 312–13  
 Yüan empire, 438–41 *map*  
 Yüan Fei 元妃, 114, 147, 232, 233  
 Yüan government/regime, 2, 11, 37, 587–608; Court for Buddhist and Tibetan Affairs, 27; decline of, 498–501, disintegration of, 580–4, 653; exploitation and repression of ethnic minorities, 551–2; joint deliberation, 24–5  
 Yüan Hao-wen 元好問, 307–8, 311  
*yüan-i* deliberation in a circle, 25  
 Yüan imperial history, power of ministers in, 548–9  
 Yüan imperial line, shift back to Khaishan's house, 541–5, 547, 549  
 Yüan khanate, suzerainty of, 503, 504  
 Yüan literature, 467  
*yüan-pen* 院本, 309, 310  
 Yüan period, 22, 204  
 Yüan rule/rulers administrative weakness of, 663  
 brutality of, 30  
 ethnic separation bedrock of, 569–70  
 institutional rigidity of, 651  
 regionalization of, 582–4  
 Toghön Temür and end of, 561–86  
*Yüan-shih* 元史 (Yüan history), 27, 238, 422, 423, 504, 522, 536, 545, 568, 590, 593, 595, 597–8, 608, 618; treatises (*chih*) of, 556  
 Yüan society, 608–15  
 Yüan state, 11  
 characteristics of, 560  
 constitution of, 527  
 five-year periodicity of succeeding administrations in, 572–3, 578  
 position of, in China in Mongolian empire, 491  
 sinicization of, 534  
 Yüan theater, 467–8; *see also* Yüan drama  
*Yüan tien chang* 元典章 (Institutions of the Yüan), 290, 519, 660  
*yüan-tso*, discussion in a circle, 25  
 Yüeh-chou, 110  
 Yüeh Fei 岳飛, 232, 233  
 Yüeh-lu T'ieh-mu-erh 月魯帖木兒 (Örlüg Temür), 533, 544  
 Yüeh Shih 樂實, 510–11, 514  
 Yün-chou 雲州, 58, 117  
 Yün-nan (province), 544, 618  
 Yün-te-shih 勻德實, *see* Hsüan-tsui  
*Yung-lo ta tien* 永樂大典 (Great canon of the Yung-lo era), 556  
 Yunnan 雲南, 3, 4, 405, 410, 421, 618; branch Censorate at, 603; loyalists in, 545; under Mongolian control, 407, 417, 623  
 Yünnan (province), uprisings in, 551